

---

---

## *I Foundations*

---

## Introduction

This part will start you thinking about designing and analyzing algorithms. It is intended to be a gentle introduction to how we specify algorithms, some of the design strategies we will use throughout this book, and many of the fundamental ideas used in algorithm analysis. Later parts of this book will build upon this base.

Chapter 1 provides an overview of algorithms and their place in modern computing systems. This chapter defines what an algorithm is and lists some examples. It also makes a case that we should consider algorithms as a technology, alongside technologies such as fast hardware, graphical user interfaces, object-oriented systems, and networks.

In Chapter 2, we see our first algorithms, which solve the problem of sorting a sequence of  $n$  numbers. They are written in a pseudocode which, although not directly translatable to any conventional programming language, conveys the structure of the algorithm clearly enough that you should be able to implement it in the language of your choice. The sorting algorithms we examine are insertion sort, which uses an incremental approach, and merge sort, which uses a recursive technique known as “divide-and-conquer.” Although the time each requires increases with the value of  $n$ , the rate of increase differs between the two algorithms. We determine these running times in Chapter 2, and we develop a useful notation to express them.

Chapter 3 precisely defines this notation, which we call asymptotic notation. It starts by defining several asymptotic notations, which we use for bounding algorithm running times from above and/or below. The rest of Chapter 3 is primarily a presentation of mathematical notation, more to ensure that your use of notation matches that in this book than to teach you new mathematical concepts.

Chapter 4 delves further into the divide-and-conquer method introduced in Chapter 2. It provides additional examples of divide-and-conquer algorithms, including Strassen’s surprising method for multiplying two square matrices. Chapter 4 contains methods for solving recurrences, which are useful for describing the running times of recursive algorithms. One powerful technique is the “master method,” which we often use to solve recurrences that arise from divide-and-conquer algorithms. Although much of Chapter 4 is devoted to proving the correctness of the master method, you may skip this proof yet still employ the master method.

Chapter 5 introduces probabilistic analysis and randomized algorithms. We typically use probabilistic analysis to determine the running time of an algorithm in cases in which, due to the presence of an inherent probability distribution, the running time may differ on different inputs of the same size. In some cases, we assume that the inputs conform to a known probability distribution, so that we are averaging the running time over all possible inputs. In other cases, the probability distribution comes not from the inputs but from random choices made during the course of the algorithm. An algorithm whose behavior is determined not only by its input but by the values produced by a random-number generator is a randomized algorithm. We can use randomized algorithms to enforce a probability distribution on the inputs—thereby ensuring that no particular input always causes poor performance—or even to bound the error rate of algorithms that are allowed to produce incorrect results on a limited basis.

Appendices A–D contain other mathematical material that you will find helpful as you read this book. You are likely to have seen much of the material in the appendix chapters before having read this book (although the specific definitions and notational conventions we use may differ in some cases from what you have seen in the past), and so you should think of the Appendices as reference material. On the other hand, you probably have not already seen most of the material in Part I. All the chapters in Part I and the Appendices are written with a tutorial flavor.

---

# 1 The Role of Algorithms in Computing

What are algorithms? Why is the study of algorithms worthwhile? What is the role of algorithms relative to other technologies used in computers? In this chapter, we will answer these questions.

---

## 1.1 Algorithms

Informally, an **algorithm** is any well-defined computational procedure that takes some value, or set of values, as **input** and produces some value, or set of values, as **output**. An algorithm is thus a sequence of computational steps that transform the input into the output.

We can also view an algorithm as a tool for solving a well-specified **computational problem**. The statement of the problem specifies in general terms the desired input/output relationship. The algorithm describes a specific computational procedure for achieving that input/output relationship.

For example, we might need to sort a sequence of numbers into nondecreasing order. This problem arises frequently in practice and provides fertile ground for introducing many standard design techniques and analysis tools. Here is how we formally define the **sorting problem**:

**Input:** A sequence of  $n$  numbers  $\langle a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \rangle$ .

**Output:** A permutation (reordering)  $\langle a'_1, a'_2, \dots, a'_n \rangle$  of the input sequence such that  $a'_1 \leq a'_2 \leq \dots \leq a'_n$ .

For example, given the input sequence  $\langle 31, 41, 59, 26, 41, 58 \rangle$ , a sorting algorithm returns as output the sequence  $\langle 26, 31, 41, 41, 58, 59 \rangle$ . Such an input sequence is called an **instance** of the sorting problem. In general, an **instance of a problem** consists of the input (satisfying whatever constraints are imposed in the problem statement) needed to compute a solution to the problem.

Because many programs use it as an intermediate step, sorting is a fundamental operation in computer science. As a result, we have a large number of good sorting algorithms at our disposal. Which algorithm is best for a given application depends on—among other factors—the number of items to be sorted, the extent to which the items are already somewhat sorted, possible restrictions on the item values, the architecture of the computer, and the kind of storage devices to be used: main memory, disks, or even tapes.

An algorithm is said to be *correct* if, for every input instance, it halts with the correct output. We say that a correct algorithm *solves* the given computational problem. An incorrect algorithm might not halt at all on some input instances, or it might halt with an incorrect answer. Contrary to what you might expect, incorrect algorithms can sometimes be useful, if we can control their error rate. We shall see an example of an algorithm with a controllable error rate in Chapter 31 when we study algorithms for finding large prime numbers. Ordinarily, however, we shall be concerned only with correct algorithms.

An algorithm can be specified in English, as a computer program, or even as a hardware design. The only requirement is that the specification must provide a precise description of the computational procedure to be followed.

### **What kinds of problems are solved by algorithms?**

Sorting is by no means the only computational problem for which algorithms have been developed. (You probably suspected as much when you saw the size of this book.) Practical applications of algorithms are ubiquitous and include the following examples:

- The Human Genome Project has made great progress toward the goals of identifying all the 100,000 genes in human DNA, determining the sequences of the 3 billion chemical base pairs that make up human DNA, storing this information in databases, and developing tools for data analysis. Each of these steps requires sophisticated algorithms. Although the solutions to the various problems involved are beyond the scope of this book, many methods to solve these biological problems use ideas from several of the chapters in this book, thereby enabling scientists to accomplish tasks while using resources efficiently. The savings are in time, both human and machine, and in money, as more information can be extracted from laboratory techniques.
- The Internet enables people all around the world to quickly access and retrieve large amounts of information. With the aid of clever algorithms, sites on the Internet are able to manage and manipulate this large volume of data. Examples of problems that make essential use of algorithms include finding good routes on which the data will travel (techniques for solving such problems appear in

Chapter 24), and using a search engine to quickly find pages on which particular information resides (related techniques are in Chapters 11 and 32).

- Electronic commerce enables goods and services to be negotiated and exchanged electronically, and it depends on the privacy of personal information such as credit card numbers, passwords, and bank statements. The core technologies used in electronic commerce include public-key cryptography and digital signatures (covered in Chapter 31), which are based on numerical algorithms and number theory.
- Manufacturing and other commercial enterprises often need to allocate scarce resources in the most beneficial way. An oil company may wish to know where to place its wells in order to maximize its expected profit. A political candidate may want to determine where to spend money buying campaign advertising in order to maximize the chances of winning an election. An airline may wish to assign crews to flights in the least expensive way possible, making sure that each flight is covered and that government regulations regarding crew scheduling are met. An Internet service provider may wish to determine where to place additional resources in order to serve its customers more effectively. All of these are examples of problems that can be solved using linear programming, which we shall study in Chapter 29.

Although some of the details of these examples are beyond the scope of this book, we do give underlying techniques that apply to these problems and problem areas. We also show how to solve many specific problems, including the following:

- We are given a road map on which the distance between each pair of adjacent intersections is marked, and we wish to determine the shortest route from one intersection to another. The number of possible routes can be huge, even if we disallow routes that cross over themselves. How do we choose which of all possible routes is the shortest? Here, we model the road map (which is itself a model of the actual roads) as a graph (which we will meet in Part VI and Appendix B), and we wish to find the shortest path from one vertex to another in the graph. We shall see how to solve this problem efficiently in Chapter 24.
- We are given two ordered sequences of symbols,  $X = \langle x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m \rangle$  and  $Y = \langle y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n \rangle$ , and we wish to find a longest common subsequence of  $X$  and  $Y$ . A subsequence of  $X$  is just  $X$  with some (or possibly all or none) of its elements removed. For example, one subsequence of  $\langle A, B, C, D, E, F, G \rangle$  would be  $\langle B, C, E, G \rangle$ . The length of a longest common subsequence of  $X$  and  $Y$  gives one measure of how similar these two sequences are. For example, if the two sequences are base pairs in DNA strands, then we might consider them similar if they have a long common subsequence. If  $X$  has  $m$  symbols and  $Y$  has  $n$  symbols, then  $X$  and  $Y$  have  $2^m$  and  $2^n$  possible subsequences,

respectively. Selecting all possible subsequences of  $X$  and  $Y$  and matching them up could take a prohibitively long time unless  $m$  and  $n$  are very small. We shall see in Chapter 15 how to use a general technique known as dynamic programming to solve this problem much more efficiently.

- We are given a mechanical design in terms of a library of parts, where each part may include instances of other parts, and we need to list the parts in order so that each part appears before any part that uses it. If the design comprises  $n$  parts, then there are  $n!$  possible orders, where  $n!$  denotes the factorial function. Because the factorial function grows faster than even an exponential function, we cannot feasibly generate each possible order and then verify that, within that order, each part appears before the parts using it (unless we have only a few parts). This problem is an instance of topological sorting, and we shall see in Chapter 22 how to solve this problem efficiently.
- We are given  $n$  points in the plane, and we wish to find the convex hull of these points. The convex hull is the smallest convex polygon containing the points. Intuitively, we can think of each point as being represented by a nail sticking out from a board. The convex hull would be represented by a tight rubber band that surrounds all the nails. Each nail around which the rubber band makes a turn is a vertex of the convex hull. (See Figure 33.6 on page 1029 for an example.) Any of the  $2^n$  subsets of the points might be the vertices of the convex hull. Knowing which points are vertices of the convex hull is not quite enough, either, since we also need to know the order in which they appear. There are many choices, therefore, for the vertices of the convex hull. Chapter 33 gives two good methods for finding the convex hull.

These lists are far from exhaustive (as you again have probably surmised from this book's heft), but exhibit two characteristics that are common to many interesting algorithmic problems:

1. They have many candidate solutions, the overwhelming majority of which do not solve the problem at hand. Finding one that does, or one that is “best,” can present quite a challenge.
2. They have practical applications. Of the problems in the above list, finding the shortest path provides the easiest examples. A trucking or railroad company, such as a trucking or railroad company, has a financial interest in finding shortest paths through a road or rail network because taking shorter paths results in lower labor and fuel costs. Or a routing node on the Internet may need to find the shortest path through the network in order to route a message quickly. Or a person wishing to drive from New York to Boston may want to find driving directions from an appropriate Web site, or she may use her GPS while driving.

Not every problem solved by algorithms has an easily identified set of candidate solutions. For example, suppose we are given a set of numerical values representing samples of a signal, and we want to compute the discrete Fourier transform of these samples. The discrete Fourier transform converts the time domain to the frequency domain, producing a set of numerical coefficients, so that we can determine the strength of various frequencies in the sampled signal. In addition to lying at the heart of signal processing, discrete Fourier transforms have applications in data compression and multiplying large polynomials and integers. Chapter 30 gives an efficient algorithm, the fast Fourier transform (commonly called the FFT), for this problem, and the chapter also sketches out the design of a hardware circuit to compute the FFT.

### **Data structures**

This book also contains several data structures. A *data structure* is a way to store and organize data in order to facilitate access and modifications. No single data structure works well for all purposes, and so it is important to know the strengths and limitations of several of them.

### **Technique**

Although you can use this book as a “cookbook” for algorithms, you may someday encounter a problem for which you cannot readily find a published algorithm (many of the exercises and problems in this book, for example). This book will teach you techniques of algorithm design and analysis so that you can develop algorithms on your own, show that they give the correct answer, and understand their efficiency. Different chapters address different aspects of algorithmic problem solving. Some chapters address specific problems, such as finding medians and order statistics in Chapter 9, computing minimum spanning trees in Chapter 23, and determining a maximum flow in a network in Chapter 26. Other chapters address techniques, such as divide-and-conquer in Chapter 4, dynamic programming in Chapter 15, and amortized analysis in Chapter 17.

### **Hard problems**

Most of this book is about efficient algorithms. Our usual measure of efficiency is speed, i.e., how long an algorithm takes to produce its result. There are some problems, however, for which no efficient solution is known. Chapter 34 studies an interesting subset of these problems, which are known as NP-complete.

Why are NP-complete problems interesting? First, although no efficient algorithm for an NP-complete problem has ever been found, nobody has ever proven



that an efficient algorithm for one cannot exist. In other words, no one knows whether or not efficient algorithms exist for NP-complete problems. Second, the set of NP-complete problems has the remarkable property that if an efficient algorithm exists for any one of them, then efficient algorithms exist for all of them. This relationship among the NP-complete problems makes the lack of efficient solutions all the more tantalizing. Third, several NP-complete problems are similar, but not identical, to problems for which we do know of efficient algorithms. Computer scientists are intrigued by how a small change to the problem statement can cause a big change to the efficiency of the best known algorithm.

You should know about NP-complete problems because some of them arise surprisingly often in real applications. If you are called upon to produce an efficient algorithm for an NP-complete problem, you are likely to spend a lot of time in a fruitless search. If you can show that the problem is NP-complete, you can instead spend your time developing an efficient algorithm that gives a good, but not the best possible, solution.

As a concrete example, consider a delivery company with a central depot. Each day, it loads up each delivery truck at the depot and sends it around to deliver goods to several addresses. At the end of the day, each truck must end up back at the depot so that it is ready to be loaded for the next day. To reduce costs, the company wants to select an order of delivery stops that yields the lowest overall distance traveled by each truck. This problem is the well-known “traveling-salesman problem,” and it is NP-complete. It has no known efficient algorithm. Under certain assumptions, however, we know of efficient algorithms that give an overall distance which is not too far above the smallest possible. Chapter 35 discusses such “approximation algorithms.”

## **Parallelism**

For many years, we could count on processor clock speeds increasing at a steady rate. Physical limitations present a fundamental roadblock to ever-increasing clock speeds, however: because power density increases superlinearly with clock speed, chips run the risk of melting once their clock speeds become high enough. In order to perform more computations per second, therefore, chips are being designed to contain not just one but several processing “cores.” We can liken these multicore computers to several sequential computers on a single chip; in other words, they are a type of “parallel computer.” In order to elicit the best performance from multicore computers, we need to design algorithms with parallelism in mind. Chapter 27 presents a model for “multithreaded” algorithms, which take advantage of multiple cores. This model has advantages from a theoretical standpoint, and it forms the basis of several successful computer programs, including a championship chess program.

**Exercises****1.1-1**

Give a real-world example that requires sorting or a real-world example that requires computing a convex hull.

**1.1-2**

Other than speed, what other measures of efficiency might one use in a real-world setting?

**1.1-3**

Select a data structure that you have seen previously, and discuss its strengths and limitations.

**1.1-4**

How are the shortest-path and traveling-salesman problems given above similar? How are they different?

**1.1-5**

Come up with a real-world problem in which only the best solution will do. Then come up with one in which a solution that is “approximately” the best is good enough.

---

**1.2 Algorithms as a technology**

Suppose computers were infinitely fast and computer memory was free. Would you have any reason to study algorithms? The answer is yes, if for no other reason than that you would still like to demonstrate that your solution method terminates and does so with the correct answer.

If computers were infinitely fast, any correct method for solving a problem would do. You would probably want your implementation to be within the bounds of good software engineering practice (for example, your implementation should be well designed and documented), but you would most often use whichever method was the easiest to implement.

Of course, computers may be fast, but they are not infinitely fast. And memory may be inexpensive, but it is not free. Computing time is therefore a bounded resource, and so is space in memory. You should use these resources wisely, and algorithms that are efficient in terms of time or space will help you do so.

## Efficiency

Different algorithms devised to solve the same problem often differ dramatically in their efficiency. These differences can be much more significant than differences due to hardware and software.

As an example, in Chapter 2, we will see two algorithms for sorting. The first, known as **insertion sort**, takes time roughly equal to  $c_1 n^2$  to sort  $n$  items, where  $c_1$  is a constant that does not depend on  $n$ . That is, it takes time roughly proportional to  $n^2$ . The second, **merge sort**, takes time roughly equal to  $c_2 n \lg n$ , where  $\lg n$  stands for  $\log_2 n$  and  $c_2$  is another constant that also does not depend on  $n$ . Insertion sort typically has a smaller constant factor than merge sort, so that  $c_1 < c_2$ . We shall see that the constant factors can have far less of an impact on the running time than the dependence on the input size  $n$ . Let's write insertion sort's running time as  $c_1 n \cdot n$  and merge sort's running time as  $c_2 n \cdot \lg n$ . Then we see that where insertion sort has a factor of  $n$  in its running time, merge sort has a factor of  $\lg n$ , which is much smaller. (For example, when  $n = 1000$ ,  $\lg n$  is approximately 10, and when  $n$  equals one million,  $\lg n$  is approximately only 20.) Although insertion sort usually runs faster than merge sort for small input sizes, once the input size  $n$  becomes large enough, merge sort's advantage of  $\lg n$  vs.  $n$  will more than compensate for the difference in constant factors. No matter how much smaller  $c_1$  is than  $c_2$ , there will always be a crossover point beyond which merge sort is faster.

For a concrete example, let us pit a faster computer (computer A) running insertion sort against a slower computer (computer B) running merge sort. They each must sort an array of 10 million numbers. (Although 10 million numbers might seem like a lot, if the numbers are eight-byte integers, then the input occupies about 80 megabytes, which fits in the memory of even an inexpensive laptop computer many times over.) Suppose that computer A executes 10 billion instructions per second (faster than any single sequential computer at the time of this writing) and computer B executes only 10 million instructions per second, so that computer A is 1000 times faster than computer B in raw computing power. To make the difference even more dramatic, suppose that the world's craftiest programmer codes insertion sort in machine language for computer A, and the resulting code requires  $2n^2$  instructions to sort  $n$  numbers. Suppose further that just an average programmer implements merge sort, using a high-level language with an inefficient compiler, with the resulting code taking  $50n \lg n$  instructions. To sort 10 million numbers, computer A takes

$$\frac{2 \cdot (10^7)^2 \text{ instructions}}{10^{10} \text{ instructions/second}} = 20,000 \text{ seconds (more than 5.5 hours) ,}$$

while computer B takes

$$\frac{50 \cdot 10^7 \lg 10^7 \text{ instructions}}{10^7 \text{ instructions/second}} \approx 1163 \text{ seconds (less than 20 minutes)} .$$

By using an algorithm whose running time grows more slowly, even with a poor compiler, computer B runs more than 17 times faster than computer A! The advantage of merge sort is even more pronounced when we sort 100 million numbers: where insertion sort takes more than 23 days, merge sort takes under four hours. In general, as the problem size increases, so does the relative advantage of merge sort.

### Algorithms and other technologies

The example above shows that we should consider algorithms, like computer hardware, as a **technology**. Total system performance depends on choosing efficient algorithms as much as on choosing fast hardware. Just as rapid advances are being made in other computer technologies, they are being made in algorithms as well.

You might wonder whether algorithms are truly that important on contemporary computers in light of other advanced technologies, such as

- advanced computer architectures and fabrication technologies,
- easy-to-use, intuitive, graphical user interfaces (GUIs),
- object-oriented systems,
- integrated Web technologies, and
- fast networking, both wired and wireless.

The answer is yes. Although some applications do not explicitly require algorithmic content at the application level (such as some simple, Web-based applications), many do. For example, consider a Web-based service that determines how to travel from one location to another. Its implementation would rely on fast hardware, a graphical user interface, wide-area networking, and also possibly on object orientation. However, it would also require algorithms for certain operations, such as finding routes (probably using a shortest-path algorithm), rendering maps, and interpolating addresses.

Moreover, even an application that does not require algorithmic content at the application level relies heavily upon algorithms. Does the application rely on fast hardware? The hardware design used algorithms. Does the application rely on graphical user interfaces? The design of any GUI relies on algorithms. Does the application rely on networking? Routing in networks relies heavily on algorithms. Was the application written in a language other than machine code? Then it was processed by a compiler, interpreter, or assembler, all of which make extensive use

of algorithms. Algorithms are at the core of most technologies used in contemporary computers.

Furthermore, with the ever-increasing capacities of computers, we use them to solve larger problems than ever before. As we saw in the above comparison between insertion sort and merge sort, it is at larger problem sizes that the differences in efficiency between algorithms become particularly prominent.

Having a solid base of algorithmic knowledge and technique is one characteristic that separates the truly skilled programmers from the novices. With modern computing technology, you can accomplish some tasks without knowing much about algorithms, but with a good background in algorithms, you can do much, much more.

## Exercises

### 1.2-1

Give an example of an application that requires algorithmic content at the application level, and discuss the function of the algorithms involved.

### 1.2-2

Suppose we are comparing implementations of insertion sort and merge sort on the same machine. For inputs of size  $n$ , insertion sort runs in  $8n^2$  steps, while merge sort runs in  $64n \lg n$  steps. For which values of  $n$  does insertion sort beat merge sort?

### 1.2-3

What is the smallest value of  $n$  such that an algorithm whose running time is  $100n^2$  runs faster than an algorithm whose running time is  $2^n$  on the same machine?

---

## Problems

### 1-1 Comparison of running times

For each function  $f(n)$  and time  $t$  in the following table, determine the largest size  $n$  of a problem that can be solved in time  $t$ , assuming that the algorithm to solve the problem takes  $f(n)$  microseconds.

	1 second	1 minute	1 hour	1 day	1 month	1 year	1 century
$\lg n$							
$\sqrt{n}$							
$n$							
$n \lg n$							
$n^2$							
$n^3$							
$2^n$							
$n!$							

---

## Chapter notes

There are many excellent texts on the general topic of algorithms, including those by Aho, Hopcroft, and Ullman [5, 6]; Baase and Van Gelder [28]; Brassard and Bratley [54]; Dasgupta, Papadimitriou, and Vazirani [82]; Goodrich and Tamassia [148]; Hofri [175]; Horowitz, Sahni, and Rajasekaran [181]; Johnsonbaugh and Schaefer [193]; Kingston [205]; Kleinberg and Tardos [208]; Knuth [209, 210, 211]; Kozen [220]; Levitin [235]; Manber [242]; Mehlhorn [249, 250, 251]; Purdom and Brown [287]; Reingold, Nievergelt, and Deo [293]; Sedgewick [306]; Sedgewick and Flajolet [307]; Skiena [318]; and Wilf [356]. Some of the more practical aspects of algorithm design are discussed by Bentley [42, 43] and Gonnet [145]. Surveys of the field of algorithms can also be found in the *Handbook of Theoretical Computer Science, Volume A* [342] and the *CRC Algorithms and Theory of Computation Handbook* [25]. Overviews of the algorithms used in computational biology can be found in textbooks by Gusfield [156], Pevzner [275], Setubal and Meidanis [310], and Waterman [350].

---

## 2 Getting Started

This chapter will familiarize you with the framework we shall use throughout the book to think about the design and analysis of algorithms. It is self-contained, but it does include several references to material that we introduce in Chapters 3 and 4. (It also contains several summations, which Appendix A shows how to solve.)

We begin by examining the insertion sort algorithm to solve the sorting problem introduced in Chapter 1. We define a “pseudocode” that should be familiar to you if you have done computer programming, and we use it to show how we shall specify our algorithms. Having specified the insertion sort algorithm, we then argue that it correctly sorts, and we analyze its running time. The analysis introduces a notation that focuses on how that time increases with the number of items to be sorted. Following our discussion of insertion sort, we introduce the divide-and-conquer approach to the design of algorithms and use it to develop an algorithm called merge sort. We end with an analysis of merge sort’s running time.

---

### 2.1 Insertion sort

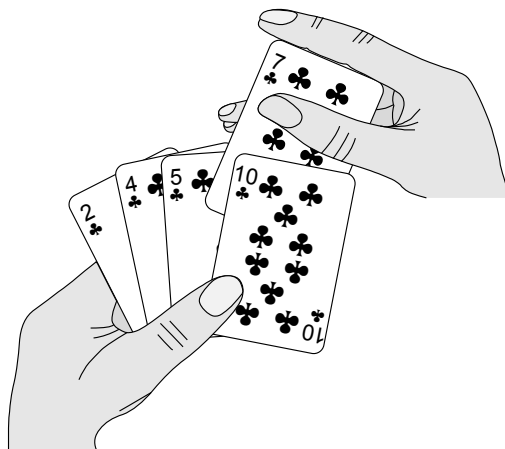
Our first algorithm, insertion sort, solves the *sorting problem* introduced in Chapter 1:

**Input:** A sequence of  $n$  numbers  $\langle a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \rangle$ .

**Output:** A permutation (reordering)  $\langle a'_1, a'_2, \dots, a'_n \rangle$  of the input sequence such that  $a'_1 \leq a'_2 \leq \dots \leq a'_n$ .

The numbers that we wish to sort are also known as the *keys*. Although conceptually we are sorting a sequence, the input comes to us in the form of an array with  $n$  elements.

In this book, we shall typically describe algorithms as programs written in a *pseudocode* that is similar in many respects to C, C++, Java, Python, or Pascal. If you have been introduced to any of these languages, you should have little trouble



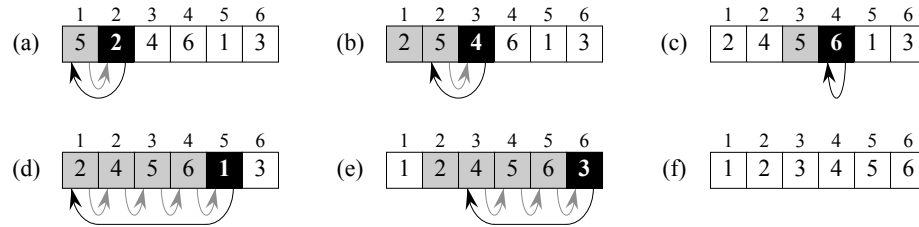
**Figure 2.1** Sorting a hand of cards using insertion sort.

reading our algorithms. What separates pseudocode from “real” code is that in pseudocode, we employ whatever expressive method is most clear and concise to specify a given algorithm. Sometimes, the clearest method is English, so do not be surprised if you come across an English phrase or sentence embedded within a section of “real” code. Another difference between pseudocode and real code is that pseudocode is not typically concerned with issues of software engineering. Issues of data abstraction, modularity, and error handling are often ignored in order to convey the essence of the algorithm more concisely.

We start with *insertion sort*, which is an efficient algorithm for sorting a small number of elements. Insertion sort works the way many people sort a hand of playing cards. We start with an empty left hand and the cards face down on the table. We then remove one card at a time from the table and insert it into the correct position in the left hand. To find the correct position for a card, we compare it with each of the cards already in the hand, from right to left, as illustrated in Figure 2.1. At all times, the cards held in the left hand are sorted, and these cards were originally the top cards of the pile on the table.

We present our pseudocode for insertion sort as a procedure called INSERTION-SORT, which takes as a parameter an array  $A[1..n]$  containing a sequence of length  $n$  that is to be sorted. (In the code, the number  $n$  of elements in  $A$  is denoted by  $A.length$ .) The algorithm sorts the input numbers *in place*: it rearranges the numbers within the array  $A$ , with at most a constant number of them stored outside the array at any time. The input array  $A$  contains the sorted output sequence when the INSERTION-SORT procedure is finished.





**Figure 2.2** The operation of INSERTION-SORT on the array  $A = \langle 5, 2, 4, 6, 1, 3 \rangle$ . Array indices appear above the rectangles, and values stored in the array positions appear within the rectangles. (a)–(e) The iterations of the **for** loop of lines 1–8. In each iteration, the black rectangle holds the key taken from  $A[j]$ , which is compared with the values in shaded rectangles to its left in the test of line 5. Shaded arrows show array values moved one position to the right in line 6, and black arrows indicate where the key moves to in line 8. (f) The final sorted array.

INSERTION-SORT( $A$ )

```

1  for  $j = 2$  to  $A.length$ 
2       $key = A[j]$ 
3      // Insert  $A[j]$  into the sorted sequence  $A[1..j-1]$ .
4       $i = j - 1$ 
5      while  $i > 0$  and  $A[i] > key$ 
6           $A[i+1] = A[i]$ 
7           $i = i - 1$ 
8       $A[i+1] = key$ 

```

### Loop invariants and the correctness of insertion sort

Figure 2.2 shows how this algorithm works for  $A = \langle 5, 2, 4, 6, 1, 3 \rangle$ . The index  $j$  indicates the “current card” being inserted into the hand. At the beginning of each iteration of the **for** loop, which is indexed by  $j$ , the subarray consisting of elements  $A[1..j-1]$  constitutes the currently sorted hand, and the remaining subarray  $A[j+1..n]$  corresponds to the pile of cards still on the table. In fact, elements  $A[1..j-1]$  are the elements *originally* in positions 1 through  $j-1$ , but now in sorted order. We state these properties of  $A[1..j-1]$  formally as a **loop invariant**:

At the start of each iteration of the **for** loop of lines 1–8, the subarray  $A[1..j-1]$  consists of the elements originally in  $A[1..j-1]$ , but in sorted order.

We use loop invariants to help us understand why an algorithm is correct. We must show three things about a loop invariant:

**Initialization:** It is true prior to the first iteration of the loop.

**Maintenance:** If it is true before an iteration of the loop, it remains true before the next iteration.

**Termination:** When the loop terminates, the invariant gives us a useful property that helps show that the algorithm is correct.

When the first two properties hold, the loop invariant is true prior to every iteration of the loop. (Of course, we are free to use established facts other than the loop invariant itself to prove that the loop invariant remains true before each iteration.) Note the similarity to mathematical induction, where to prove that a property holds, you prove a base case and an inductive step. Here, showing that the invariant holds before the first iteration corresponds to the base case, and showing that the invariant holds from iteration to iteration corresponds to the inductive step.

The third property is perhaps the most important one, since we are using the loop invariant to show correctness. Typically, we use the loop invariant along with the condition that caused the loop to terminate. The termination property differs from how we usually use mathematical induction, in which we apply the inductive step infinitely; here, we stop the “induction” when the loop terminates.

Let us see how these properties hold for insertion sort.

**Initialization:** We start by showing that the loop invariant holds before the first loop iteration, when  $j = 2$ .<sup>1</sup> The subarray  $A[1..j-1]$ , therefore, consists of just the single element  $A[1]$ , which is in fact the original element in  $A[1]$ . Moreover, this subarray is sorted (trivially, of course), which shows that the loop invariant holds prior to the first iteration of the loop.

**Maintenance:** Next, we tackle the second property: showing that each iteration maintains the loop invariant. Informally, the body of the **for** loop works by moving  $A[j-1]$ ,  $A[j-2]$ ,  $A[j-3]$ , and so on by one position to the right until it finds the proper position for  $A[j]$  (lines 4–7), at which point it inserts the value of  $A[j]$  (line 8). The subarray  $A[1..j]$  then consists of the elements originally in  $A[1..j]$ , but in sorted order. Incrementing  $j$  for the next iteration of the **for** loop then preserves the loop invariant.

A more formal treatment of the second property would require us to state and show a loop invariant for the **while** loop of lines 5–7. At this point, however,

---

<sup>1</sup>When the loop is a **for** loop, the moment at which we check the loop invariant just prior to the first iteration is immediately after the initial assignment to the loop-counter variable and just before the first test in the loop header. In the case of INSERTION-SORT, this time is after assigning 2 to the variable  $j$  but before the first test of whether  $j \leq A.length$ .

we prefer not to get bogged down in such formalism, and so we rely on our informal analysis to show that the second property holds for the outer loop.

**Termination:** Finally, we examine what happens when the loop terminates. The condition causing the **for** loop to terminate is that  $j > A.length = n$ . Because each loop iteration increases  $j$  by 1, we must have  $j = n + 1$  at that time. Substituting  $n + 1$  for  $j$  in the wording of loop invariant, we have that the subarray  $A[1..n]$  consists of the elements originally in  $A[1..n]$ , but in sorted order. Observing that the subarray  $A[1..n]$  is the entire array, we conclude that the entire array is sorted. Hence, the algorithm is correct.

We shall use this method of loop invariants to show correctness later in this chapter and in other chapters as well.

### Pseudocode conventions

We use the following conventions in our pseudocode.

- Indentation indicates block structure. For example, the body of the **for** loop that begins on line 1 consists of lines 2–8, and the body of the **while** loop that begins on line 5 contains lines 6–7 but not line 8. Our indentation style applies to **if-else** statements<sup>2</sup> as well. Using indentation instead of conventional indicators of block structure, such as **begin** and **end** statements, greatly reduces clutter while preserving, or even enhancing, clarity.<sup>3</sup>
- The looping constructs **while**, **for**, and **repeat-until** and the **if-else** conditional construct have interpretations similar to those in C, C++, Java, Python, and Pascal.<sup>4</sup> In this book, the loop counter retains its value after exiting the loop, unlike some situations that arise in C++, Java, and Pascal. Thus, immediately after a **for** loop, the loop counter's value is the value that first exceeded the **for** loop bound. We used this property in our correctness argument for insertion sort. The **for** loop header in line 1 is **for**  $j = 2$  **to**  $A.length$ , and so when this loop terminates,  $j = A.length + 1$  (or, equivalently,  $j = n + 1$ , since  $n = A.length$ ). We use the keyword **to** when a **for** loop increments its loop

---

<sup>2</sup>In an **if-else** statement, we indent **else** at the same level as its matching **if**. Although we omit the keyword **then**, we occasionally refer to the portion executed when the test following **if** is true as a **then clause**. For multiway tests, we use **elseif** for tests after the first one.

<sup>3</sup>Each pseudocode procedure in this book appears on one page so that you will not have to discern levels of indentation in code that is split across pages.

<sup>4</sup>Most block-structured languages have equivalent constructs, though the exact syntax may differ. Python lacks **repeat-until** loops, and its **for** loops operate a little differently from the **for** loops in this book.

counter in each iteration, and we use the keyword **downto** when a **for** loop decrements its loop counter. When the loop counter changes by an amount greater than 1, the amount of change follows the optional keyword **by**.

- The symbol “//” indicates that the remainder of the line is a comment.
- A multiple assignment of the form  $i = j = e$  assigns to both variables  $i$  and  $j$  the value of expression  $e$ ; it should be treated as equivalent to the assignment  $j = e$  followed by the assignment  $i = j$ .
- Variables (such as  $i$ ,  $j$ , and  $key$ ) are local to the given procedure. We shall not use global variables without explicit indication.
- We access array elements by specifying the array name followed by the index in square brackets. For example,  $A[i]$  indicates the  $i$ th element of the array  $A$ . The notation “.” is used to indicate a range of values within an array. Thus,  $A[1..j]$  indicates the subarray of  $A$  consisting of the  $j$  elements  $A[1], A[2], \dots, A[j]$ .
- We typically organize compound data into **objects**, which are composed of **attributes**. We access a particular attribute using the syntax found in many object-oriented programming languages: the object name, followed by a dot, followed by the attribute name. For example, we treat an array as an object with the attribute *length* indicating how many elements it contains. To specify the number of elements in an array  $A$ , we write  $A.length$ .

We treat a variable representing an array or object as a pointer to the data representing the array or object. For all attributes  $f$  of an object  $x$ , setting  $y = x$  causes  $y.f$  to equal  $x.f$ . Moreover, if we now set  $x.f = 3$ , then afterward not only does  $x.f$  equal 3, but  $y.f$  equals 3 as well. In other words,  $x$  and  $y$  point to the same object after the assignment  $y = x$ .

Our attribute notation can “cascade.” For example, suppose that the attribute  $f$  is itself a pointer to some type of object that has an attribute  $g$ . Then the notation  $x.f.g$  is implicitly parenthesized as  $(x.f).g$ . In other words, if we had assigned  $y = x.f$ , then  $x.f.g$  is the same as  $y.g$ .

Sometimes, a pointer will refer to no object at all. In this case, we give it the special value NIL.

- We pass parameters to a procedure **by value**: the called procedure receives its own copy of the parameters, and if it assigns a value to a parameter, the change is *not* seen by the calling procedure. When objects are passed, the pointer to the data representing the object is copied, but the object’s attributes are not. For example, if  $x$  is a parameter of a called procedure, the assignment  $x = y$  within the called procedure is not visible to the calling procedure. The assignment  $x.f = 3$ , however, is visible. Similarly, arrays are passed by pointer, so that

a pointer to the array is passed, rather than the entire array, and changes to individual array elements are visible to the calling procedure.

- A **return** statement immediately transfers control back to the point of call in the calling procedure. Most **return** statements also take a value to pass back to the caller. Our pseudocode differs from many programming languages in that we allow multiple values to be returned in a single **return** statement.
- The boolean operators “and” and “or” are *short circuiting*. That is, when we evaluate the expression “ $x$  and  $y$ ” we first evaluate  $x$ . If  $x$  evaluates to FALSE, then the entire expression cannot evaluate to TRUE, and so we do not evaluate  $y$ . If, on the other hand,  $x$  evaluates to TRUE, we must evaluate  $y$  to determine the value of the entire expression. Similarly, in the expression “ $x$  or  $y$ ” we evaluate the expression  $y$  only if  $x$  evaluates to FALSE. Short-circuiting operators allow us to write boolean expressions such as “ $x \neq \text{NIL}$  and  $x.f = y$ ” without worrying about what happens when we try to evaluate  $x.f$  when  $x$  is NIL.
- The keyword **error** indicates that an error occurred because conditions were wrong for the procedure to have been called. The calling procedure is responsible for handling the error, and so we do not specify what action to take.

## Exercises

### 2.1-1

Using Figure 2.2 as a model, illustrate the operation of INSERTION-SORT on the array  $A = \langle 31, 41, 59, 26, 41, 58 \rangle$ .

### 2.1-2

Rewrite the INSERTION-SORT procedure to sort into nonincreasing instead of non-decreasing order.

### 2.1-3

Consider the *searching problem*:

**Input:** A sequence of  $n$  numbers  $A = \langle a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \rangle$  and a value  $v$ .

**Output:** An index  $i$  such that  $v = A[i]$  or the special value NIL if  $v$  does not appear in  $A$ .

Write pseudocode for *linear search*, which scans through the sequence, looking for  $v$ . Using a loop invariant, prove that your algorithm is correct. Make sure that your loop invariant fulfills the three necessary properties.

### 2.1-4

Consider the problem of adding two  $n$ -bit binary integers, stored in two  $n$ -element arrays  $A$  and  $B$ . The sum of the two integers should be stored in binary form in

an  $(n + 1)$ -element array  $C$ . State the problem formally and write pseudocode for adding the two integers.

---

## 2.2 Analyzing algorithms

**Analyzing** an algorithm has come to mean predicting the resources that the algorithm requires. Occasionally, resources such as memory, communication bandwidth, or computer hardware are of primary concern, but most often it is computational time that we want to measure. Generally, by analyzing several candidate algorithms for a problem, we can identify a most efficient one. Such analysis may indicate more than one viable candidate, but we can often discard several inferior algorithms in the process.

Before we can analyze an algorithm, we must have a model of the implementation technology that we will use, including a model for the resources of that technology and their costs. For most of this book, we shall assume a generic one-processor, **random-access machine (RAM)** model of computation as our implementation technology and understand that our algorithms will be implemented as computer programs. In the RAM model, instructions are executed one after another, with no concurrent operations.

Strictly speaking, we should precisely define the instructions of the RAM model and their costs. To do so, however, would be tedious and would yield little insight into algorithm design and analysis. Yet we must be careful not to abuse the RAM model. For example, what if a RAM had an instruction that sorts? Then we could sort in just one instruction. Such a RAM would be unrealistic, since real computers do not have such instructions. Our guide, therefore, is how real computers are designed. The RAM model contains instructions commonly found in real computers: arithmetic (such as add, subtract, multiply, divide, remainder, floor, ceiling), data movement (load, store, copy), and control (conditional and unconditional branch, subroutine call and return). Each such instruction takes a constant amount of time.

The data types in the RAM model are integer and floating point (for storing real numbers). Although we typically do not concern ourselves with precision in this book, in some applications precision is crucial. We also assume a limit on the size of each word of data. For example, when working with inputs of size  $n$ , we typically assume that integers are represented by  $c \lg n$  bits for some constant  $c \geq 1$ . We require  $c \geq 1$  so that each word can hold the value of  $n$ , enabling us to index the individual input elements, and we restrict  $c$  to be a constant so that the word size does not grow arbitrarily. (If the word size could grow arbitrarily, we could store huge amounts of data in one word and operate on it all in constant time—clearly an unrealistic scenario.)

Real computers contain instructions not listed above, and such instructions represent a gray area in the RAM model. For example, is exponentiation a constant-time instruction? In the general case, no; it takes several instructions to compute  $x^y$  when  $x$  and  $y$  are real numbers. In restricted situations, however, exponentiation is a constant-time operation. Many computers have a “shift left” instruction, which in constant time shifts the bits of an integer by  $k$  positions to the left. In most computers, shifting the bits of an integer by one position to the left is equivalent to multiplication by 2, so that shifting the bits by  $k$  positions to the left is equivalent to multiplication by  $2^k$ . Therefore, such computers can compute  $2^k$  in one constant-time instruction by shifting the integer 1 by  $k$  positions to the left, as long as  $k$  is no more than the number of bits in a computer word. We will endeavor to avoid such gray areas in the RAM model, but we will treat computation of  $2^k$  as a constant-time operation when  $k$  is a small enough positive integer.

In the RAM model, we do not attempt to model the memory hierarchy that is common in contemporary computers. That is, we do not model caches or virtual memory. Several computational models attempt to account for memory-hierarchy effects, which are sometimes significant in real programs on real machines. A handful of problems in this book examine memory-hierarchy effects, but for the most part, the analyses in this book will not consider them. Models that include the memory hierarchy are quite a bit more complex than the RAM model, and so they can be difficult to work with. Moreover, RAM-model analyses are usually excellent predictors of performance on actual machines.

Analyzing even a simple algorithm in the RAM model can be a challenge. The mathematical tools required may include combinatorics, probability theory, algebraic dexterity, and the ability to identify the most significant terms in a formula. Because the behavior of an algorithm may be different for each possible input, we need a means for summarizing that behavior in simple, easily understood formulas.

Even though we typically select only one machine model to analyze a given algorithm, we still face many choices in deciding how to express our analysis. We would like a way that is simple to write and manipulate, shows the important characteristics of an algorithm’s resource requirements, and suppresses tedious details.

### **Analysis of insertion sort**

The time taken by the INSERTION-SORT procedure depends on the input: sorting a thousand numbers takes longer than sorting three numbers. Moreover, INSERTION-SORT can take different amounts of time to sort two input sequences of the same size depending on how nearly sorted they already are. In general, the time taken by an algorithm grows with the size of the input, so it is traditional to describe the running time of a program as a function of the size of its input. To do so, we need to define the terms “running time” and “size of input” more carefully.

The best notion for **input size** depends on the problem being studied. For many problems, such as sorting or computing discrete Fourier transforms, the most natural measure is the *number of items in the input*—for example, the array size  $n$  for sorting. For many other problems, such as multiplying two integers, the best measure of input size is the *total number of bits* needed to represent the input in ordinary binary notation. Sometimes, it is more appropriate to describe the size of the input with two numbers rather than one. For instance, if the input to an algorithm is a graph, the input size can be described by the numbers of vertices and edges in the graph. We shall indicate which input size measure is being used with each problem we study.

The **running time** of an algorithm on a particular input is the number of primitive operations or “steps” executed. It is convenient to define the notion of step so that it is as machine-independent as possible. For the moment, let us adopt the following view. A constant amount of time is required to execute each line of our pseudocode. One line may take a different amount of time than another line, but we shall assume that each execution of the  $i$ th line takes time  $c_i$ , where  $c_i$  is a constant. This viewpoint is in keeping with the RAM model, and it also reflects how the pseudocode would be implemented on most actual computers.<sup>5</sup>

In the following discussion, our expression for the running time of INSERTION-SORT will evolve from a messy formula that uses all the statement costs  $c_i$  to a much simpler notation that is more concise and more easily manipulated. This simpler notation will also make it easy to determine whether one algorithm is more efficient than another.

We start by presenting the INSERTION-SORT procedure with the time “cost” of each statement and the number of times each statement is executed. For each  $j = 2, 3, \dots, n$ , where  $n = A.length$ , we let  $t_j$  denote the number of times the **while** loop test in line 5 is executed for that value of  $j$ . When a **for** or **while** loop exits in the usual way (i.e., due to the test in the loop header), the test is executed one time more than the loop body. We assume that comments are not executable statements, and so they take no time.

---

<sup>5</sup>There are some subtleties here. Computational steps that we specify in English are often variants of a procedure that requires more than just a constant amount of time. For example, later in this book we might say “sort the points by  $x$ -coordinate,” which, as we shall see, takes more than a constant amount of time. Also, note that a statement that calls a subroutine takes constant time, though the subroutine, once invoked, may take more. That is, we separate the process of **calling** the subroutine—passing parameters to it, etc.—from the process of **executing** the subroutine.



INSERTION-SORT( $A$ )	<i>cost</i>	<i>times</i>
1 <b>for</b> $j = 2$ <b>to</b> $A.length$	$c_1$	$n$
2 $key = A[j]$	$c_2$	$n - 1$
3       // Insert $A[j]$ into the sorted sequence $A[1..j - 1]$ .	0	$n - 1$
4 $i = j - 1$	$c_4$	$n - 1$
5 <b>while</b> $i > 0$ and $A[i] > key$	$c_5$	$\sum_{j=2}^n t_j$
6 $A[i + 1] = A[i]$	$c_6$	$\sum_{j=2}^n (t_j - 1)$
7 $i = i - 1$	$c_7$	$\sum_{j=2}^n (t_j - 1)$
8 $A[i + 1] = key$	$c_8$	$n - 1$

The running time of the algorithm is the sum of running times for each statement executed; a statement that takes  $c_i$  steps to execute and executes  $n$  times will contribute  $c_i n$  to the total running time.<sup>6</sup> To compute  $T(n)$ , the running time of INSERTION-SORT on an input of  $n$  values, we sum the products of the *cost* and *times* columns, obtaining

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) = & c_1 n + c_2(n - 1) + c_4(n - 1) + c_5 \sum_{j=2}^n t_j + c_6 \sum_{j=2}^n (t_j - 1) \\
 & + c_7 \sum_{j=2}^n (t_j - 1) + c_8(n - 1) .
 \end{aligned}$$

Even for inputs of a given size, an algorithm's running time may depend on *which* input of that size is given. For example, in INSERTION-SORT, the best case occurs if the array is already sorted. For each  $j = 2, 3, \dots, n$ , we then find that  $A[i] \leq key$  in line 5 when  $i$  has its initial value of  $j - 1$ . Thus  $t_j = 1$  for  $j = 2, 3, \dots, n$ , and the best-case running time is

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &= c_1 n + c_2(n - 1) + c_4(n - 1) + c_5(n - 1) + c_8(n - 1) \\
 &= (c_1 + c_2 + c_4 + c_5 + c_8)n - (c_2 + c_4 + c_5 + c_8) .
 \end{aligned}$$

We can express this running time as  $an + b$  for *constants*  $a$  and  $b$  that depend on the statement costs  $c_i$ ; it is thus a **linear function** of  $n$ .

If the array is in reverse sorted order—that is, in decreasing order—the worst case results. We must compare each element  $A[j]$  with each element in the entire sorted subarray  $A[1..j - 1]$ , and so  $t_j = j$  for  $j = 2, 3, \dots, n$ . Noting that

---

<sup>6</sup>This characteristic does not necessarily hold for a resource such as memory. A statement that references  $m$  words of memory and is executed  $n$  times does not necessarily reference  $mn$  distinct words of memory.

$$\sum_{j=2}^n j = \frac{n(n+1)}{2} - 1$$

and

$$\sum_{j=2}^n (j-1) = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

(see Appendix A for a review of how to solve these summations), we find that in the worst case, the running time of INSERTION-SORT is

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= c_1 n + c_2(n-1) + c_4(n-1) + c_5 \left( \frac{n(n+1)}{2} - 1 \right) \\ &\quad + c_6 \left( \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \right) + c_7 \left( \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \right) + c_8(n-1) \\ &= \left( \frac{c_5}{2} + \frac{c_6}{2} + \frac{c_7}{2} \right) n^2 + \left( c_1 + c_2 + c_4 + \frac{c_5}{2} - \frac{c_6}{2} - \frac{c_7}{2} + c_8 \right) n \\ &\quad - (c_2 + c_4 + c_5 + c_8). \end{aligned}$$

We can express this worst-case running time as  $an^2 + bn + c$  for constants  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  that again depend on the statement costs  $c_i$ ; it is thus a **quadratic function** of  $n$ .

Typically, as in insertion sort, the running time of an algorithm is fixed for a given input, although in later chapters we shall see some interesting “randomized” algorithms whose behavior can vary even for a fixed input.

### Worst-case and average-case analysis

In our analysis of insertion sort, we looked at both the best case, in which the input array was already sorted, and the worst case, in which the input array was reverse sorted. For the remainder of this book, though, we shall usually concentrate on finding only the **worst-case running time**, that is, the longest running time for *any* input of size  $n$ . We give three reasons for this orientation.

- The worst-case running time of an algorithm gives us an upper bound on the running time for any input. Knowing it provides a guarantee that the algorithm will never take any longer. We need not make some educated guess about the running time and hope that it never gets much worse.
- For some algorithms, the worst case occurs fairly often. For example, in searching a database for a particular piece of information, the searching algorithm’s worst case will often occur when the information is not present in the database. In some applications, searches for absent information may be frequent.

- The “average case” is often roughly as bad as the worst case. Suppose that we randomly choose  $n$  numbers and apply insertion sort. How long does it take to determine where in subarray  $A[1 \dots j - 1]$  to insert element  $A[j]$ ? On average, half the elements in  $A[1 \dots j - 1]$  are less than  $A[j]$ , and half the elements are greater. On average, therefore, we check half of the subarray  $A[1 \dots j - 1]$ , and so  $t_j$  is about  $j/2$ . The resulting average-case running time turns out to be a quadratic function of the input size, just like the worst-case running time.

In some particular cases, we shall be interested in the *average-case* running time of an algorithm; we shall see the technique of *probabilistic analysis* applied to various algorithms throughout this book. The scope of average-case analysis is limited, because it may not be apparent what constitutes an “average” input for a particular problem. Often, we shall assume that all inputs of a given size are equally likely. In practice, this assumption may be violated, but we can sometimes use a *randomized algorithm*, which makes random choices, to allow a probabilistic analysis and yield an *expected* running time. We explore randomized algorithms more in Chapter 5 and in several other subsequent chapters.

## Order of growth

We used some simplifying abstractions to ease our analysis of the INSERTION-SORT procedure. First, we ignored the actual cost of each statement, using the constants  $c_i$  to represent these costs. Then, we observed that even these constants give us more detail than we really need: we expressed the worst-case running time as  $an^2 + bn + c$  for some constants  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  that depend on the statement costs  $c_i$ . We thus ignored not only the actual statement costs, but also the abstract costs  $c_i$ .

We shall now make one more simplifying abstraction: it is the *rate of growth*, or *order of growth*, of the running time that really interests us. We therefore consider only the leading term of a formula (e.g.,  $an^2$ ), since the lower-order terms are relatively insignificant for large values of  $n$ . We also ignore the leading term’s constant coefficient, since constant factors are less significant than the rate of growth in determining computational efficiency for large inputs. For insertion sort, when we ignore the lower-order terms and the leading term’s constant coefficient, we are left with the factor of  $n^2$  from the leading term. We write that insertion sort has a worst-case running time of  $\Theta(n^2)$  (pronounced “theta of  $n$ -squared”). We shall use  $\Theta$ -notation informally in this chapter, and we will define it precisely in Chapter 3.

We usually consider one algorithm to be more efficient than another if its worst-case running time has a lower order of growth. Due to constant factors and lower-order terms, an algorithm whose running time has a higher order of growth might take less time for small inputs than an algorithm whose running time has a lower

order of growth. But for large enough inputs, a  $\Theta(n^2)$  algorithm, for example, will run more quickly in the worst case than a  $\Theta(n^3)$  algorithm.

## Exercises

### 2.2-1

Express the function  $n^3/1000 - 100n^2 - 100n + 3$  in terms of  $\Theta$ -notation.

### 2.2-2

Consider sorting  $n$  numbers stored in array  $A$  by first finding the smallest element of  $A$  and exchanging it with the element in  $A[1]$ . Then find the second smallest element of  $A$ , and exchange it with  $A[2]$ . Continue in this manner for the first  $n - 1$  elements of  $A$ . Write pseudocode for this algorithm, which is known as **selection sort**. What loop invariant does this algorithm maintain? Why does it need to run for only the first  $n - 1$  elements, rather than for all  $n$  elements? Give the best-case and worst-case running times of selection sort in  $\Theta$ -notation.

### 2.2-3

Consider linear search again (see Exercise 2.1-3). How many elements of the input sequence need to be checked on the average, assuming that the element being searched for is equally likely to be any element in the array? How about in the worst case? What are the average-case and worst-case running times of linear search in  $\Theta$ -notation? Justify your answers.

### 2.2-4

How can we modify almost any algorithm to have a good best-case running time?

---

## 2.3 Designing algorithms

We can choose from a wide range of algorithm design techniques. For insertion sort, we used an **incremental** approach: having sorted the subarray  $A[1 \dots j - 1]$ , we inserted the single element  $A[j]$  into its proper place, yielding the sorted subarray  $A[1 \dots j]$ .

In this section, we examine an alternative design approach, known as “divide-and-conquer,” which we shall explore in more detail in Chapter 4. We’ll use divide-and-conquer to design a sorting algorithm whose worst-case running time is much less than that of insertion sort. One advantage of divide-and-conquer algorithms is that their running times are often easily determined using techniques that we will see in Chapter 4.

### 2.3.1 The divide-and-conquer approach

Many useful algorithms are *recursive* in structure: to solve a given problem, they call themselves recursively one or more times to deal with closely related subproblems. These algorithms typically follow a *divide-and-conquer* approach: they break the problem into several subproblems that are similar to the original problem but smaller in size, solve the subproblems recursively, and then combine these solutions to create a solution to the original problem.

The divide-and-conquer paradigm involves three steps at each level of the recursion:

**Divide** the problem into a number of subproblems that are smaller instances of the same problem.

**Conquer** the subproblems by solving them recursively. If the subproblem sizes are small enough, however, just solve the subproblems in a straightforward manner.

**Combine** the solutions to the subproblems into the solution for the original problem.

The *merge sort* algorithm closely follows the divide-and-conquer paradigm. Intuitively, it operates as follows.

**Divide:** Divide the  $n$ -element sequence to be sorted into two subsequences of  $n/2$  elements each.

**Conquer:** Sort the two subsequences recursively using merge sort.

**Combine:** Merge the two sorted subsequences to produce the sorted answer.

The recursion “bottoms out” when the sequence to be sorted has length 1, in which case there is no work to be done, since every sequence of length 1 is already in sorted order.

The key operation of the merge sort algorithm is the merging of two sorted sequences in the “combine” step. We merge by calling an auxiliary procedure  $\text{MERGE}(A, p, q, r)$ , where  $A$  is an array and  $p, q$ , and  $r$  are indices into the array such that  $p \leq q < r$ . The procedure assumes that the subarrays  $A[p..q]$  and  $A[q + 1..r]$  are in sorted order. It *merges* them to form a single sorted subarray that replaces the current subarray  $A[p..r]$ .

Our  $\text{MERGE}$  procedure takes time  $\Theta(n)$ , where  $n = r - p + 1$  is the total number of elements being merged, and it works as follows. Returning to our card-playing motif, suppose we have two piles of cards face up on a table. Each pile is sorted, with the smallest cards on top. We wish to merge the two piles into a single sorted output pile, which is to be face down on the table. Our basic step consists of choosing the smaller of the two cards on top of the face-up piles, removing it from its pile (which exposes a new top card), and placing this card face down onto

the output pile. We repeat this step until one input pile is empty, at which time we just take the remaining input pile and place it face down onto the output pile. Computationally, each basic step takes constant time, since we are comparing just the two top cards. Since we perform at most  $n$  basic steps, merging takes  $\Theta(n)$  time.

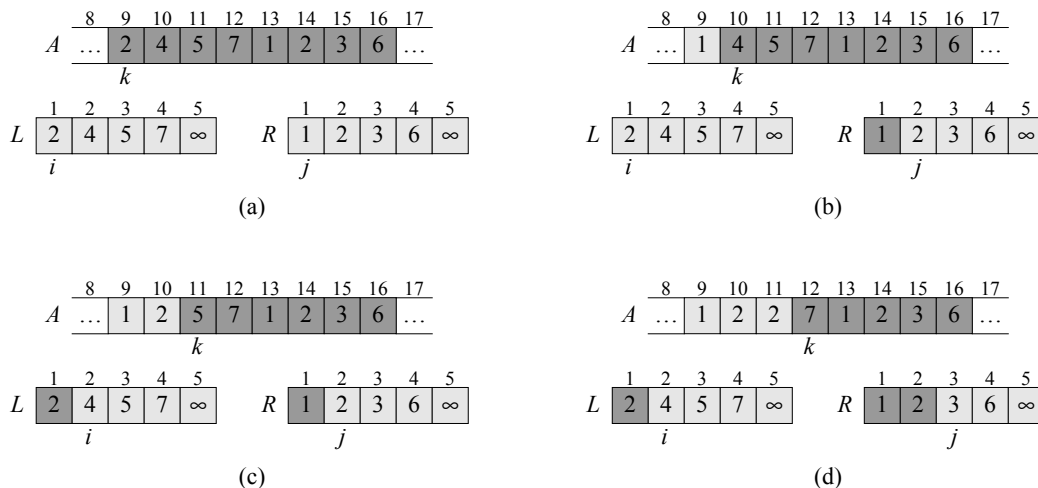
The following pseudocode implements the above idea, but with an additional twist that avoids having to check whether either pile is empty in each basic step. We place on the bottom of each pile a *sentinel* card, which contains a special value that we use to simplify our code. Here, we use  $\infty$  as the sentinel value, so that whenever a card with  $\infty$  is exposed, it cannot be the smaller card unless both piles have their sentinel cards exposed. But once that happens, all the nonsentinel cards have already been placed onto the output pile. Since we know in advance that exactly  $r - p + 1$  cards will be placed onto the output pile, we can stop once we have performed that many basic steps.

```

MERGE( $A, p, q, r$ )
1   $n_1 = q - p + 1$ 
2   $n_2 = r - q$ 
3  let  $L[1..n_1 + 1]$  and  $R[1..n_2 + 1]$  be new arrays
4  for  $i = 1$  to  $n_1$ 
5       $L[i] = A[p + i - 1]$ 
6  for  $j = 1$  to  $n_2$ 
7       $R[j] = A[q + j]$ 
8   $L[n_1 + 1] = \infty$ 
9   $R[n_2 + 1] = \infty$ 
10  $i = 1$ 
11  $j = 1$ 
12 for  $k = p$  to  $r$ 
13     if  $L[i] \leq R[j]$ 
14          $A[k] = L[i]$ 
15          $i = i + 1$ 
16     else  $A[k] = R[j]$ 
17          $j = j + 1$ 

```

In detail, the MERGE procedure works as follows. Line 1 computes the length  $n_1$  of the subarray  $A[p..q]$ , and line 2 computes the length  $n_2$  of the subarray  $A[q + 1..r]$ . We create arrays  $L$  and  $R$  (“left” and “right”), of lengths  $n_1 + 1$  and  $n_2 + 1$ , respectively, in line 3; the extra position in each array will hold the sentinel. The **for** loop of lines 4–5 copies the subarray  $A[p..q]$  into  $L[1..n_1]$ , and the **for** loop of lines 6–7 copies the subarray  $A[q + 1..r]$  into  $R[1..n_2]$ . Lines 8–9 put the sentinels at the ends of the arrays  $L$  and  $R$ . Lines 10–17, illus-



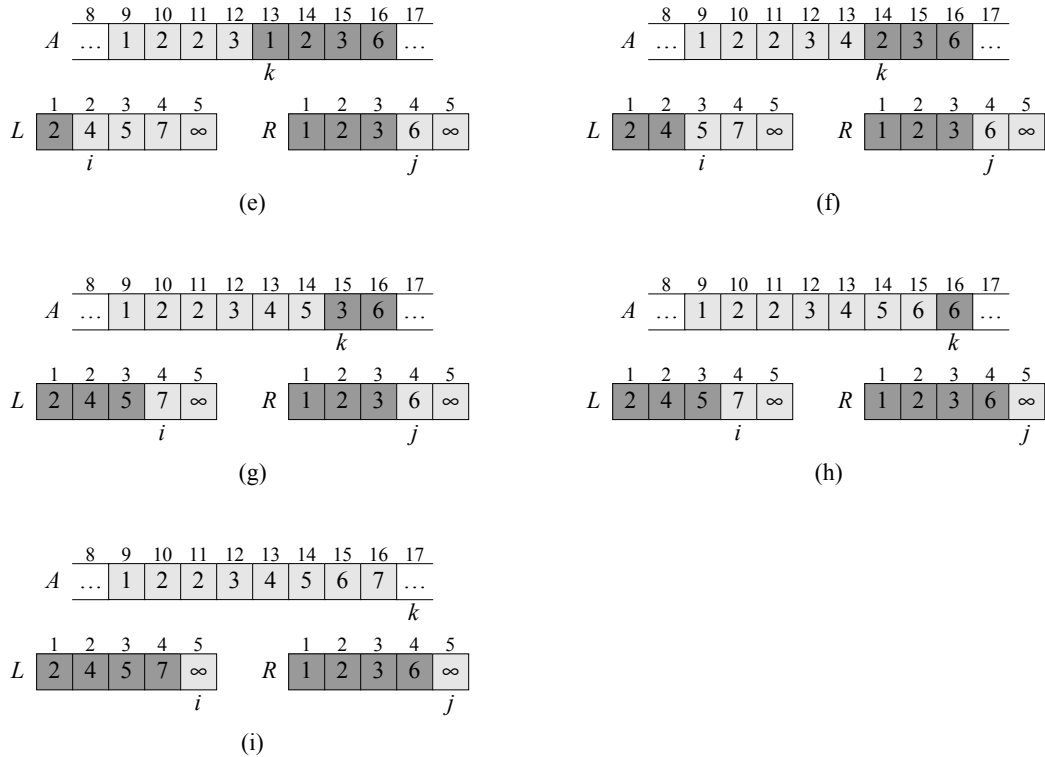
**Figure 2.3** The operation of lines 10–17 in the call `MERGE( $A, 9, 12, 16$ )`, when the subarray  $A[9..16]$  contains the sequence  $\langle 2, 4, 5, 7, 1, 2, 3, 6 \rangle$ . After copying and inserting sentinels, the array  $L$  contains  $\langle 2, 4, 5, 7, \infty \rangle$ , and the array  $R$  contains  $\langle 1, 2, 3, 6, \infty \rangle$ . Lightly shaded positions in  $A$  contain their final values, and lightly shaded positions in  $L$  and  $R$  contain values that have yet to be copied back into  $A$ . Taken together, the lightly shaded positions always comprise the values originally in  $A[9..16]$ , along with the two sentinels. Heavily shaded positions in  $A$  contain values that will be copied over, and heavily shaded positions in  $L$  and  $R$  contain values that have already been copied back into  $A$ . **(a)–(h)** The arrays  $A$ ,  $L$ , and  $R$ , and their respective indices  $k$ ,  $i$ , and  $j$  prior to each iteration of the loop of lines 12–17.

trated in Figure 2.3, perform the  $r - p + 1$  basic steps by maintaining the following loop invariant:

At the start of each iteration of the **for** loop of lines 12–17, the subarray  $A[p..k - 1]$  contains the  $k - p$  smallest elements of  $L[1..n_1 + 1]$  and  $R[1..n_2 + 1]$ , in sorted order. Moreover,  $L[i]$  and  $R[j]$  are the smallest elements of their arrays that have not been copied back into  $A$ .

We must show that this loop invariant holds prior to the first iteration of the **for** loop of lines 12–17, that each iteration of the loop maintains the invariant, and that the invariant provides a useful property to show correctness when the loop terminates.

**Initialization:** Prior to the first iteration of the loop, we have  $k = p$ , so that the subarray  $A[p..k - 1]$  is empty. This empty subarray contains the  $k - p = 0$  smallest elements of  $L$  and  $R$ , and since  $i = j = 1$ , both  $L[i]$  and  $R[j]$  are the smallest elements of their arrays that have not been copied back into  $A$ .



**Figure 2.3, continued (i)** The arrays and indices at termination. At this point, the subarray in  $A[9 \dots 16]$  is sorted, and the two sentinels in  $L$  and  $R$  are the only two elements in these arrays that have not been copied into  $A$ .

**Maintenance:** To see that each iteration maintains the loop invariant, let us first suppose that  $L[i] \leq R[j]$ . Then  $L[i]$  is the smallest element not yet copied back into  $A$ . Because  $A[p \dots k-1]$  contains the  $k-p$  smallest elements, after line 14 copies  $L[i]$  into  $A[k]$ , the subarray  $A[p \dots k]$  will contain the  $k-p+1$  smallest elements. Incrementing  $k$  (in the **for** loop update) and  $i$  (in line 15) reestablishes the loop invariant for the next iteration. If instead  $L[i] > R[j]$ , then lines 16–17 perform the appropriate action to maintain the loop invariant.

**Termination:** At termination,  $k = r + 1$ . By the loop invariant, the subarray  $A[p \dots k-1]$ , which is  $A[p \dots r]$ , contains the  $k-p = r-p+1$  smallest elements of  $L[1 \dots n_1+1]$  and  $R[1 \dots n_2+1]$ , in sorted order. The arrays  $L$  and  $R$  together contain  $n_1 + n_2 + 2 = r - p + 3$  elements. All but the two largest have been copied back into  $A$ , and these two largest elements are the sentinels.



To see that the MERGE procedure runs in  $\Theta(n)$  time, where  $n = r - p + 1$ , observe that each of lines 1–3 and 8–11 takes constant time, the **for** loops of lines 4–7 take  $\Theta(n_1 + n_2) = \Theta(n)$  time,<sup>7</sup> and there are  $n$  iterations of the **for** loop of lines 12–17, each of which takes constant time.

We can now use the MERGE procedure as a subroutine in the merge sort algorithm. The procedure MERGE-SORT( $A, p, r$ ) sorts the elements in the subarray  $A[p..r]$ . If  $p \geq r$ , the subarray has at most one element and is therefore already sorted. Otherwise, the divide step simply computes an index  $q$  that partitions  $A[p..r]$  into two subarrays:  $A[p..q]$ , containing  $\lceil n/2 \rceil$  elements, and  $A[q+1..r]$ , containing  $\lfloor n/2 \rfloor$  elements.<sup>8</sup>

MERGE-SORT( $A, p, r$ )

```

1  if  $p < r$ 
2       $q = \lfloor (p + r)/2 \rfloor$ 
3      MERGE-SORT( $A, p, q$ )
4      MERGE-SORT( $A, q + 1, r$ )
5      MERGE( $A, p, q, r$ )

```

To sort the entire sequence  $A = \langle A[1], A[2], \dots, A[n] \rangle$ , we make the initial call MERGE-SORT( $A, 1, A.length$ ), where once again  $A.length = n$ . Figure 2.4 illustrates the operation of the procedure bottom-up when  $n$  is a power of 2. The algorithm consists of merging pairs of 1-item sequences to form sorted sequences of length 2, merging pairs of sequences of length 2 to form sorted sequences of length 4, and so on, until two sequences of length  $n/2$  are merged to form the final sorted sequence of length  $n$ .

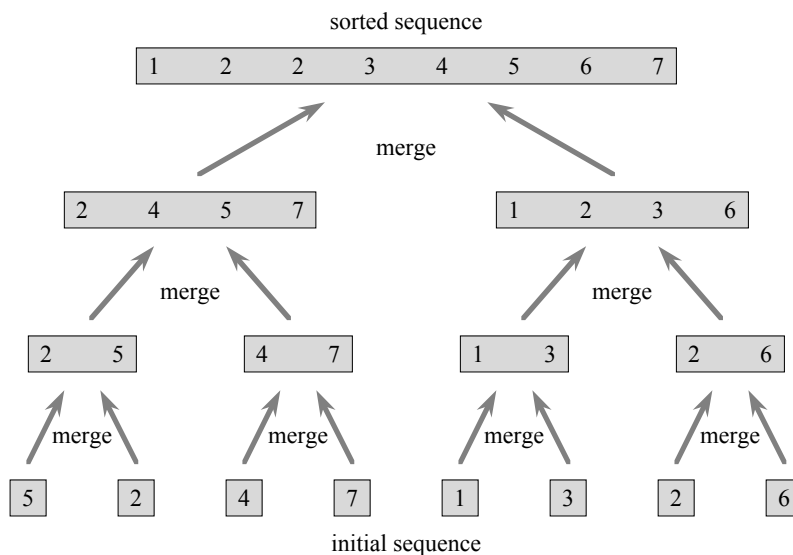
### 2.3.2 Analyzing divide-and-conquer algorithms

When an algorithm contains a recursive call to itself, we can often describe its running time by a **recurrence equation** or **recurrence**, which describes the overall running time on a problem of size  $n$  in terms of the running time on smaller inputs. We can then use mathematical tools to solve the recurrence and provide bounds on the performance of the algorithm.

---

<sup>7</sup>We shall see in Chapter 3 how to formally interpret equations containing  $\Theta$ -notation.

<sup>8</sup>The expression  $\lceil x \rceil$  denotes the least integer greater than or equal to  $x$ , and  $\lfloor x \rfloor$  denotes the greatest integer less than or equal to  $x$ . These notations are defined in Chapter 3. The easiest way to verify that setting  $q$  to  $\lfloor (p + r)/2 \rfloor$  yields subarrays  $A[p..q]$  and  $A[q + 1..r]$  of sizes  $\lceil n/2 \rceil$  and  $\lfloor n/2 \rfloor$ , respectively, is to examine the four cases that arise depending on whether each of  $p$  and  $r$  is odd or even.



**Figure 2.4** The operation of merge sort on the array  $A = \langle 5, 2, 4, 7, 1, 3, 2, 6 \rangle$ . The lengths of the sorted sequences being merged increase as the algorithm progresses from bottom to top.

A recurrence for the running time of a divide-and-conquer algorithm falls out from the three steps of the basic paradigm. As before, we let  $T(n)$  be the running time on a problem of size  $n$ . If the problem size is small enough, say  $n \leq c$  for some constant  $c$ , the straightforward solution takes constant time, which we write as  $\Theta(1)$ . Suppose that our division of the problem yields  $a$  subproblems, each of which is  $1/b$  the size of the original. (For merge sort, both  $a$  and  $b$  are 2, but we shall see many divide-and-conquer algorithms in which  $a \neq b$ .) It takes time  $T(n/b)$  to solve one subproblem of size  $n/b$ , and so it takes time  $aT(n/b)$  to solve  $a$  of them. If we take  $D(n)$  time to divide the problem into subproblems and  $C(n)$  time to combine the solutions to the subproblems into the solution to the original problem, we get the recurrence

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n \leq c, \\ aT(n/b) + D(n) + C(n) & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

In Chapter 4, we shall see how to solve common recurrences of this form.

### Analysis of merge sort

Although the pseudocode for MERGE-SORT works correctly when the number of elements is not even, our recurrence-based analysis is simplified if we assume that

the original problem size is a power of 2. Each divide step then yields two subsequences of size exactly  $n/2$ . In Chapter 4, we shall see that this assumption does not affect the order of growth of the solution to the recurrence.

We reason as follows to set up the recurrence for  $T(n)$ , the worst-case running time of merge sort on  $n$  numbers. Merge sort on just one element takes constant time. When we have  $n > 1$  elements, we break down the running time as follows.

**Divide:** The divide step just computes the middle of the subarray, which takes constant time. Thus,  $D(n) = \Theta(1)$ .

**Conquer:** We recursively solve two subproblems, each of size  $n/2$ , which contributes  $2T(n/2)$  to the running time.

**Combine:** We have already noted that the MERGE procedure on an  $n$ -element subarray takes time  $\Theta(n)$ , and so  $C(n) = \Theta(n)$ .

When we add the functions  $D(n)$  and  $C(n)$  for the merge sort analysis, we are adding a function that is  $\Theta(n)$  and a function that is  $\Theta(1)$ . This sum is a linear function of  $n$ , that is,  $\Theta(n)$ . Adding it to the  $2T(n/2)$  term from the “conquer” step gives the recurrence for the worst-case running time  $T(n)$  of merge sort:

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1, \\ 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } n > 1. \end{cases} \quad (2.1)$$

In Chapter 4, we shall see the “master theorem,” which we can use to show that  $T(n)$  is  $\Theta(n \lg n)$ , where  $\lg n$  stands for  $\log_2 n$ . Because the logarithm function grows more slowly than any linear function, for large enough inputs, merge sort, with its  $\Theta(n \lg n)$  running time, outperforms insertion sort, whose running time is  $\Theta(n^2)$ , in the worst case.

We do not need the master theorem to intuitively understand why the solution to the recurrence (2.1) is  $T(n) = \Theta(n \lg n)$ . Let us rewrite recurrence (2.1) as

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} c & \text{if } n = 1, \\ 2T(n/2) + cn & \text{if } n > 1, \end{cases} \quad (2.2)$$

where the constant  $c$  represents the time required to solve problems of size 1 as well as the time per array element of the divide and combine steps.<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>9</sup>It is unlikely that the same constant exactly represents both the time to solve problems of size 1 and the time per array element of the divide and combine steps. We can get around this problem by letting  $c$  be the larger of these times and understanding that our recurrence gives an upper bound on the running time, or by letting  $c$  be the lesser of these times and understanding that our recurrence gives a lower bound on the running time. Both bounds are on the order of  $n \lg n$  and, taken together, give a  $\Theta(n \lg n)$  running time.

Figure 2.5 shows how we can solve recurrence (2.2). For convenience, we assume that  $n$  is an exact power of 2. Part (a) of the figure shows  $T(n)$ , which we expand in part (b) into an equivalent tree representing the recurrence. The  $cn$  term is the root (the cost incurred at the top level of recursion), and the two subtrees of the root are the two smaller recurrences  $T(n/2)$ . Part (c) shows this process carried one step further by expanding  $T(n/2)$ . The cost incurred at each of the two subnodes at the second level of recursion is  $cn/2$ . We continue expanding each node in the tree by breaking it into its constituent parts as determined by the recurrence, until the problem sizes get down to 1, each with a cost of  $c$ . Part (d) shows the resulting **recursion tree**.

Next, we add the costs across each level of the tree. The top level has total cost  $cn$ , the next level down has total cost  $c(n/2) + c(n/2) = cn$ , the level after that has total cost  $c(n/4) + c(n/4) + c(n/4) + c(n/4) = cn$ , and so on. In general, the level  $i$  below the top has  $2^i$  nodes, each contributing a cost of  $c(n/2^i)$ , so that the  $i$ th level below the top has total cost  $2^i c(n/2^i) = cn$ . The bottom level has  $n$  nodes, each contributing a cost of  $c$ , for a total cost of  $cn$ .

The total number of levels of the recursion tree in Figure 2.5 is  $\lg n + 1$ , where  $n$  is the number of leaves, corresponding to the input size. An informal inductive argument justifies this claim. The base case occurs when  $n = 1$ , in which case the tree has only one level. Since  $\lg 1 = 0$ , we have that  $\lg n + 1$  gives the correct number of levels. Now assume as an inductive hypothesis that the number of levels of a recursion tree with  $2^i$  leaves is  $\lg 2^i + 1 = i + 1$  (since for any value of  $i$ , we have that  $\lg 2^i = i$ ). Because we are assuming that the input size is a power of 2, the next input size to consider is  $2^{i+1}$ . A tree with  $n = 2^{i+1}$  leaves has one more level than a tree with  $2^i$  leaves, and so the total number of levels is  $(i + 1) + 1 = \lg 2^{i+1} + 1$ .

To compute the total cost represented by the recurrence (2.2), we simply add up the costs of all the levels. The recursion tree has  $\lg n + 1$  levels, each costing  $cn$ , for a total cost of  $cn(\lg n + 1) = cn \lg n + cn$ . Ignoring the low-order term and the constant  $c$  gives the desired result of  $\Theta(n \lg n)$ .

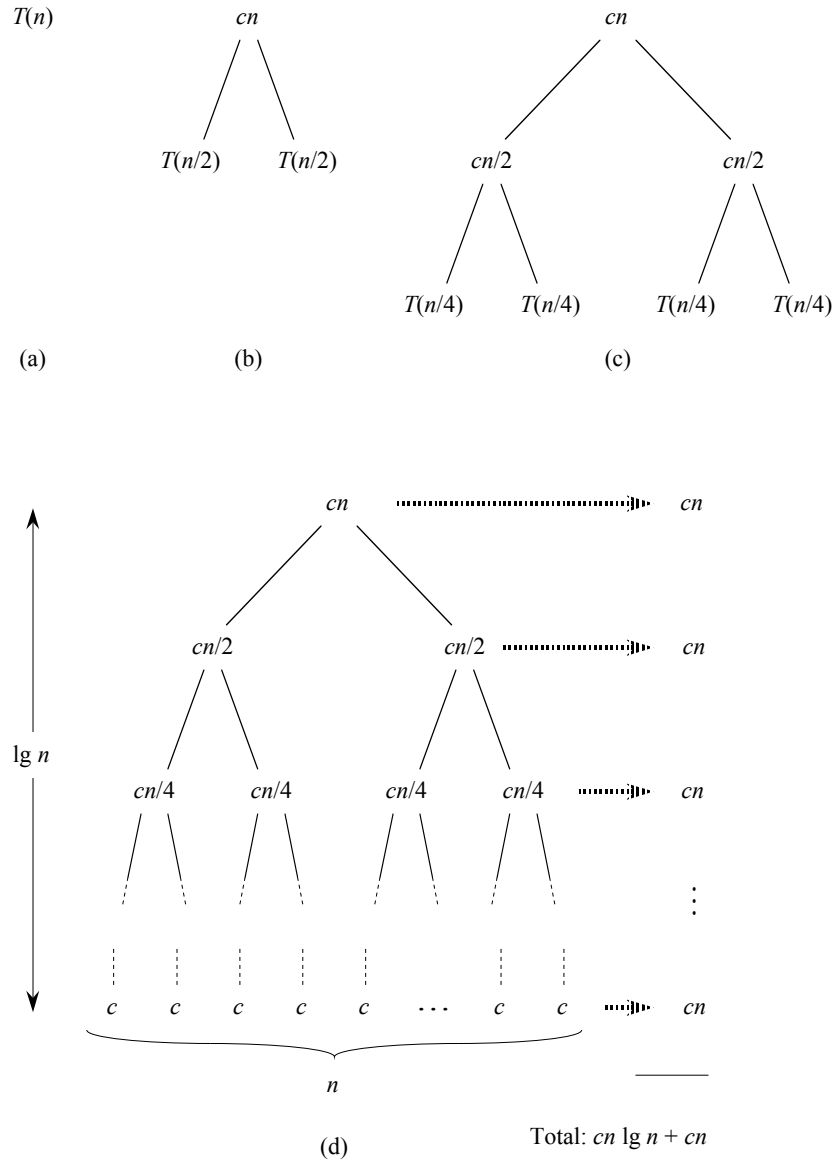
## Exercises

### 2.3-1

Using Figure 2.4 as a model, illustrate the operation of merge sort on the array  $A = \langle 3, 41, 52, 26, 38, 57, 9, 49 \rangle$ .

### 2.3-2

Rewrite the MERGE procedure so that it does not use sentinels, instead stopping once either array  $L$  or  $R$  has had all its elements copied back to  $A$  and then copying the remainder of the other array back into  $A$ .



**Figure 2.5** How to construct a recursion tree for the recurrence  $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$ . Part (a) shows  $T(n)$ , which progressively expands in (b)–(d) to form the recursion tree. The fully expanded tree in part (d) has  $\lg n + 1$  levels (i.e., it has height  $\lg n$ , as indicated), and each level contributes a total cost of  $cn$ . The total cost, therefore, is  $cn \lg n + cn$ , which is  $\Theta(n \lg n)$ .

**2.3-3**

Use mathematical induction to show that when  $n$  is an exact power of 2, the solution of the recurrence

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } n = 2, \\ 2T(n/2) + n & \text{if } n = 2^k, \text{ for } k > 1 \end{cases}$$

is  $T(n) = n \lg n$ .

**2.3-4**

We can express insertion sort as a recursive procedure as follows. In order to sort  $A[1..n]$ , we recursively sort  $A[1..n-1]$  and then insert  $A[n]$  into the sorted array  $A[1..n-1]$ . Write a recurrence for the worst-case running time of this recursive version of insertion sort.

**2.3-5**

Referring back to the searching problem (see Exercise 2.1-3), observe that if the sequence  $A$  is sorted, we can check the midpoint of the sequence against  $v$  and eliminate half of the sequence from further consideration. The **binary search** algorithm repeats this procedure, halving the size of the remaining portion of the sequence each time. Write pseudocode, either iterative or recursive, for binary search. Argue that the worst-case running time of binary search is  $\Theta(\lg n)$ .

**2.3-6**

Observe that the **while** loop of lines 5–7 of the INSERTION-SORT procedure in Section 2.1 uses a linear search to scan (backward) through the sorted subarray  $A[1..j-1]$ . Can we use a binary search (see Exercise 2.3-5) instead to improve the overall worst-case running time of insertion sort to  $\Theta(n \lg n)$ ?

**2.3-7 ★**

Describe a  $\Theta(n \lg n)$ -time algorithm that, given a set  $S$  of  $n$  integers and another integer  $x$ , determines whether or not there exist two elements in  $S$  whose sum is exactly  $x$ .

---

**Problems**
**2-1 Insertion sort on small arrays in merge sort**

Although merge sort runs in  $\Theta(n \lg n)$  worst-case time and insertion sort runs in  $\Theta(n^2)$  worst-case time, the constant factors in insertion sort can make it faster in practice for small problem sizes on many machines. Thus, it makes sense to **coarsen** the leaves of the recursion by using insertion sort within merge sort when

subproblems become sufficiently small. Consider a modification to merge sort in which  $n/k$  sublists of length  $k$  are sorted using insertion sort and then merged using the standard merging mechanism, where  $k$  is a value to be determined.

- a. Show that insertion sort can sort the  $n/k$  sublists, each of length  $k$ , in  $\Theta(nk)$  worst-case time.
- b. Show how to merge the sublists in  $\Theta(n \lg(n/k))$  worst-case time.
- c. Given that the modified algorithm runs in  $\Theta(nk + n \lg(n/k))$  worst-case time, what is the largest value of  $k$  as a function of  $n$  for which the modified algorithm has the same running time as standard merge sort, in terms of  $\Theta$ -notation?
- d. How should we choose  $k$  in practice?

## 2-2 Correctness of bubblesort

Bubblesort is a popular, but inefficient, sorting algorithm. It works by repeatedly swapping adjacent elements that are out of order.

BUBBLESORT( $A$ )

```

1  for  $i = 1$  to  $A.length - 1$ 
2      for  $j = A.length$  downto  $i + 1$ 
3          if  $A[j] < A[j - 1]$ 
4              exchange  $A[j]$  with  $A[j - 1]$ 
```

- a. Let  $A'$  denote the output of BUBBLESORT( $A$ ). To prove that BUBBLESORT is correct, we need to prove that it terminates and that

$$A'[1] \leq A'[2] \leq \dots \leq A'[n], \quad (2.3)$$

where  $n = A.length$ . In order to show that BUBBLESORT actually sorts, what else do we need to prove?

The next two parts will prove inequality (2.3).

- b. State precisely a loop invariant for the **for** loop in lines 2–4, and prove that this loop invariant holds. Your proof should use the structure of the loop invariant proof presented in this chapter.
- c. Using the termination condition of the loop invariant proved in part (b), state a loop invariant for the **for** loop in lines 1–4 that will allow you to prove inequality (2.3). Your proof should use the structure of the loop invariant proof presented in this chapter.

- d. What is the worst-case running time of bubblesort? How does it compare to the running time of insertion sort?

### 2-3 Correctness of Horner's rule

The following code fragment implements Horner's rule for evaluating a polynomial

$$\begin{aligned} P(x) &= \sum_{k=0}^n a_k x^k \\ &= a_0 + x(a_1 + x(a_2 + \cdots + x(a_{n-1} + xa_n) \cdots)) , \end{aligned}$$

given the coefficients  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n$  and a value for  $x$ :

```

1  y = 0
2  for i = n downto 0
3      y = ai + x · y

```

- a. In terms of  $\Theta$ -notation, what is the running time of this code fragment for Horner's rule?
- b. Write pseudocode to implement the naive polynomial-evaluation algorithm that computes each term of the polynomial from scratch. What is the running time of this algorithm? How does it compare to Horner's rule?
- c. Consider the following loop invariant:

At the start of each iteration of the **for** loop of lines 2–3,

$$y = \sum_{k=0}^{n-(i+1)} a_{k+i+1} x^k .$$

Interpret a summation with no terms as equaling 0. Following the structure of the loop invariant proof presented in this chapter, use this loop invariant to show that, at termination,  $y = \sum_{k=0}^n a_k x^k$ .

- d. Conclude by arguing that the given code fragment correctly evaluates a polynomial characterized by the coefficients  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n$ .

### 2-4 Inversions

Let  $A[1 \dots n]$  be an array of  $n$  distinct numbers. If  $i < j$  and  $A[i] > A[j]$ , then the pair  $(i, j)$  is called an ***inversion*** of  $A$ .

- a. List the five inversions of the array  $\langle 2, 3, 8, 6, 1 \rangle$ .



- b. What array with elements from the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  has the most inversions? How many does it have?
- c. What is the relationship between the running time of insertion sort and the number of inversions in the input array? Justify your answer.
- d. Give an algorithm that determines the number of inversions in any permutation on  $n$  elements in  $\Theta(n \lg n)$  worst-case time. (*Hint:* Modify merge sort.)

---

## Chapter notes

In 1968, Knuth published the first of three volumes with the general title *The Art of Computer Programming* [209, 210, 211]. The first volume ushered in the modern study of computer algorithms with a focus on the analysis of running time, and the full series remains an engaging and worthwhile reference for many of the topics presented here. According to Knuth, the word “algorithm” is derived from the name “al-Khowârizmî,” a ninth-century Persian mathematician.

Aho, Hopcroft, and Ullman [5] advocated the asymptotic analysis of algorithms—using notations that Chapter 3 introduces, including  $\Theta$ -notation—as a means of comparing relative performance. They also popularized the use of recurrence relations to describe the running times of recursive algorithms.

Knuth [211] provides an encyclopedic treatment of many sorting algorithms. His comparison of sorting algorithms (page 381) includes exact step-counting analyses, like the one we performed here for insertion sort. Knuth’s discussion of insertion sort encompasses several variations of the algorithm. The most important of these is Shell’s sort, introduced by D. L. Shell, which uses insertion sort on periodic subsequences of the input to produce a faster sorting algorithm.

Merge sort is also described by Knuth. He mentions that a mechanical collator capable of merging two decks of punched cards in a single pass was invented in 1938. J. von Neumann, one of the pioneers of computer science, apparently wrote a program for merge sort on the EDVAC computer in 1945.

The early history of proving programs correct is described by Gries [153], who credits P. Naur with the first article in this field. Gries attributes loop invariants to R. W. Floyd. The textbook by Mitchell [256] describes more recent progress in proving programs correct.

---

## 3 Growth of Functions

The order of growth of the running time of an algorithm, defined in Chapter 2, gives a simple characterization of the algorithm's efficiency and also allows us to compare the relative performance of alternative algorithms. Once the input size  $n$  becomes large enough, merge sort, with its  $\Theta(n \lg n)$  worst-case running time, beats insertion sort, whose worst-case running time is  $\Theta(n^2)$ . Although we can sometimes determine the exact running time of an algorithm, as we did for insertion sort in Chapter 2, the extra precision is not usually worth the effort of computing it. For large enough inputs, the multiplicative constants and lower-order terms of an exact running time are dominated by the effects of the input size itself.

When we look at input sizes large enough to make only the order of growth of the running time relevant, we are studying the *asymptotic* efficiency of algorithms. That is, we are concerned with how the running time of an algorithm increases with the size of the input *in the limit*, as the size of the input increases without bound. Usually, an algorithm that is asymptotically more efficient will be the best choice for all but very small inputs.

This chapter gives several standard methods for simplifying the asymptotic analysis of algorithms. The next section begins by defining several types of “asymptotic notation,” of which we have already seen an example in  $\Theta$ -notation. We then present several notational conventions used throughout this book, and finally we review the behavior of functions that commonly arise in the analysis of algorithms.

---

### 3.1 Asymptotic notation

The notations we use to describe the asymptotic running time of an algorithm are defined in terms of functions whose domains are the set of natural numbers  $\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ . Such notations are convenient for describing the worst-case running-time function  $T(n)$ , which usually is defined only on integer input sizes. We sometimes find it convenient, however, to *abuse* asymptotic notation in a va-

riety of ways. For example, we might extend the notation to the domain of real numbers or, alternatively, restrict it to a subset of the natural numbers. We should make sure, however, to understand the precise meaning of the notation so that when we abuse, we do not *misuse* it. This section defines the basic asymptotic notations and also introduces some common abuses.

### Asymptotic notation, functions, and running times

We will use asymptotic notation primarily to describe the running times of algorithms, as when we wrote that insertion sort's worst-case running time is  $\Theta(n^2)$ . Asymptotic notation actually applies to functions, however. Recall that we characterized insertion sort's worst-case running time as  $an^2 + bn + c$ , for some constants  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ . By writing that insertion sort's running time is  $\Theta(n^2)$ , we abstracted away some details of this function. Because asymptotic notation applies to functions, what we were writing as  $\Theta(n^2)$  was the function  $an^2 + bn + c$ , which in that case happened to characterize the worst-case running time of insertion sort.

In this book, the functions to which we apply asymptotic notation will usually characterize the running times of algorithms. But asymptotic notation can apply to functions that characterize some other aspect of algorithms (the amount of space they use, for example), or even to functions that have nothing whatsoever to do with algorithms.

Even when we use asymptotic notation to apply to the running time of an algorithm, we need to understand *which* running time we mean. Sometimes we are interested in the worst-case running time. Often, however, we wish to characterize the running time no matter what the input. In other words, we often wish to make a blanket statement that covers all inputs, not just the worst case. We shall see asymptotic notations that are well suited to characterizing running times no matter what the input.

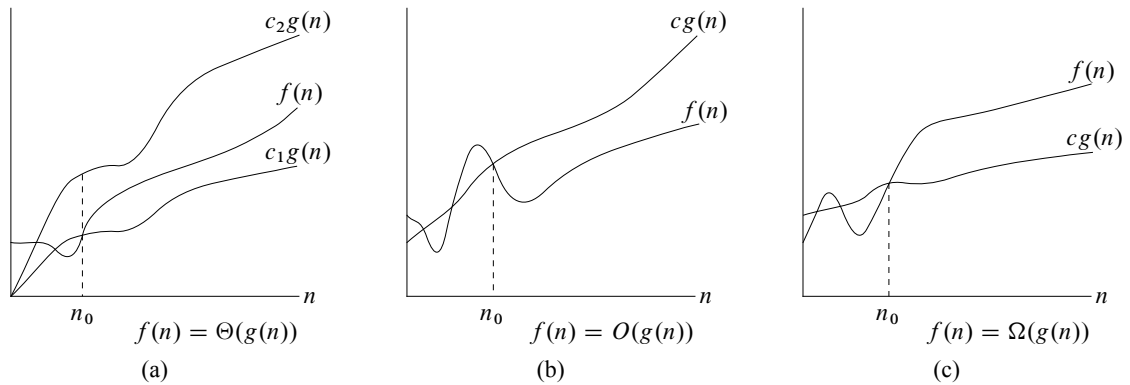
### $\Theta$ -notation

In Chapter 2, we found that the worst-case running time of insertion sort is  $T(n) = \Theta(n^2)$ . Let us define what this notation means. For a given function  $g(n)$ , we denote by  $\Theta(g(n))$  the *set of functions*

$$\Theta(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c_1, c_2, \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq c_1g(n) \leq f(n) \leq c_2g(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}.$$
<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Within set notation, a colon means “such that.”



**Figure 3.1** Graphic examples of the  $\Theta$ ,  $O$ , and  $\Omega$  notations. In each part, the value of  $n_0$  shown is the minimum possible value; any greater value would also work. **(a)**  $\Theta$ -notation bounds a function to within constant factors. We write  $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$  if there exist positive constants  $n_0$ ,  $c_1$ , and  $c_2$  such that at and to the right of  $n_0$ , the value of  $f(n)$  always lies between  $c_1g(n)$  and  $c_2g(n)$  inclusive. **(b)**  $O$ -notation gives an upper bound for a function to within a constant factor. We write  $f(n) = O(g(n))$  if there are positive constants  $n_0$  and  $c$  such that at and to the right of  $n_0$ , the value of  $f(n)$  always lies on or below  $cg(n)$ . **(c)**  $\Omega$ -notation gives a lower bound for a function to within a constant factor. We write  $f(n) = \Omega(g(n))$  if there are positive constants  $n_0$  and  $c$  such that at and to the right of  $n_0$ , the value of  $f(n)$  always lies on or above  $cg(n)$ .

A function  $f(n)$  belongs to the set  $\Theta(g(n))$  if there exist positive constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  such that it can be “sandwiched” between  $c_1g(n)$  and  $c_2g(n)$ , for sufficiently large  $n$ . Because  $\Theta(g(n))$  is a set, we could write “ $f(n) \in \Theta(g(n))$ ” to indicate that  $f(n)$  is a member of  $\Theta(g(n))$ . Instead, we will usually write “ $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$ ” to express the same notion. You might be confused because we abuse equality in this way, but we shall see later in this section that doing so has its advantages.

Figure 3.1(a) gives an intuitive picture of functions  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$ , where  $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$ . For all values of  $n$  at and to the right of  $n_0$ , the value of  $f(n)$  lies at or above  $c_1g(n)$  and at or below  $c_2g(n)$ . In other words, for all  $n \geq n_0$ , the function  $f(n)$  is equal to  $g(n)$  to within a constant factor. We say that  $g(n)$  is an **asymptotically tight bound** for  $f(n)$ .

The definition of  $\Theta(g(n))$  requires that every member  $f(n) \in \Theta(g(n))$  be **asymptotically nonnegative**, that is, that  $f(n)$  be nonnegative whenever  $n$  is sufficiently large. (An **asymptotically positive** function is one that is positive for all sufficiently large  $n$ .) Consequently, the function  $g(n)$  itself must be asymptotically nonnegative, or else the set  $\Theta(g(n))$  is empty. We shall therefore assume that every function used within  $\Theta$ -notation is asymptotically nonnegative. This assumption holds for the other asymptotic notations defined in this chapter as well.

In Chapter 2, we introduced an informal notion of  $\Theta$ -notation that amounted to throwing away lower-order terms and ignoring the leading coefficient of the highest-order term. Let us briefly justify this intuition by using the formal definition to show that  $\frac{1}{2}n^2 - 3n = \Theta(n^2)$ . To do so, we must determine positive constants  $c_1$ ,  $c_2$ , and  $n_0$  such that

$$c_1 n^2 \leq \frac{1}{2}n^2 - 3n \leq c_2 n^2$$

for all  $n \geq n_0$ . Dividing by  $n^2$  yields

$$c_1 \leq \frac{1}{2} - \frac{3}{n} \leq c_2.$$

We can make the right-hand inequality hold for any value of  $n \geq 1$  by choosing any constant  $c_2 \geq 1/2$ . Likewise, we can make the left-hand inequality hold for any value of  $n \geq 7$  by choosing any constant  $c_1 \leq 1/14$ . Thus, by choosing  $c_1 = 1/14$ ,  $c_2 = 1/2$ , and  $n_0 = 7$ , we can verify that  $\frac{1}{2}n^2 - 3n = \Theta(n^2)$ . Certainly, other choices for the constants exist, but the important thing is that *some* choice exists. Note that these constants depend on the function  $\frac{1}{2}n^2 - 3n$ ; a different function belonging to  $\Theta(n^2)$  would usually require different constants.

We can also use the formal definition to verify that  $6n^3 \neq \Theta(n^2)$ . Suppose for the purpose of contradiction that  $c_2$  and  $n_0$  exist such that  $6n^3 \leq c_2 n^2$  for all  $n \geq n_0$ . But then dividing by  $n^2$  yields  $n \leq c_2/6$ , which cannot possibly hold for arbitrarily large  $n$ , since  $c_2$  is constant.

Intuitively, the lower-order terms of an asymptotically positive function can be ignored in determining asymptotically tight bounds because they are insignificant for large  $n$ . When  $n$  is large, even a tiny fraction of the highest-order term suffices to dominate the lower-order terms. Thus, setting  $c_1$  to a value that is slightly smaller than the coefficient of the highest-order term and setting  $c_2$  to a value that is slightly larger permits the inequalities in the definition of  $\Theta$ -notation to be satisfied. The coefficient of the highest-order term can likewise be ignored, since it only changes  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  by a constant factor equal to the coefficient.

As an example, consider any quadratic function  $f(n) = an^2 + bn + c$ , where  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  are constants and  $a > 0$ . Throwing away the lower-order terms and ignoring the constant yields  $f(n) = \Theta(n^2)$ . Formally, to show the same thing, we take the constants  $c_1 = a/4$ ,  $c_2 = 7a/4$ , and  $n_0 = 2 \cdot \max(|b|/a, \sqrt{|c|/a})$ . You may verify that  $0 \leq c_1 n^2 \leq an^2 + bn + c \leq c_2 n^2$  for all  $n \geq n_0$ . In general, for any polynomial  $p(n) = \sum_{i=0}^d a_i n^i$ , where the  $a_i$  are constants and  $a_d > 0$ , we have  $p(n) = \Theta(n^d)$  (see Problem 3-1).

Since any constant is a degree-0 polynomial, we can express any constant function as  $\Theta(n^0)$ , or  $\Theta(1)$ . This latter notation is a minor abuse, however, because the

expression does not indicate what variable is tending to infinity.<sup>2</sup> We shall often use the notation  $\Theta(1)$  to mean either a constant or a constant function with respect to some variable.

### ***O*-notation**

The  $\Theta$ -notation asymptotically bounds a function from above and below. When we have only an *asymptotic upper bound*, we use *O*-notation. For a given function  $g(n)$ , we denote by  $O(g(n))$  (pronounced “big-oh of  $g$  of  $n$ ” or sometimes just “oh of  $g$  of  $n$ ”) the set of functions

$$O(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that} \\ 0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}.$$

We use *O*-notation to give an upper bound on a function, to within a constant factor. Figure 3.1(b) shows the intuition behind *O*-notation. For all values  $n$  at and to the right of  $n_0$ , the value of the function  $f(n)$  is on or below  $cg(n)$ .

We write  $f(n) = O(g(n))$  to indicate that a function  $f(n)$  is a member of the set  $O(g(n))$ . Note that  $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$  implies  $f(n) = O(g(n))$ , since  $\Theta$ -notation is a stronger notion than *O*-notation. Written set-theoretically, we have  $\Theta(g(n)) \subseteq O(g(n))$ . Thus, our proof that any quadratic function  $an^2 + bn + c$ , where  $a > 0$ , is in  $\Theta(n^2)$  also shows that any such quadratic function is in  $O(n^2)$ . What may be more surprising is that when  $a > 0$ , any *linear* function  $an + b$  is in  $O(n^2)$ , which is easily verified by taking  $c = a + |b|$  and  $n_0 = \max(1, -b/a)$ .

If you have seen *O*-notation before, you might find it strange that we should write, for example,  $n = O(n^2)$ . In the literature, we sometimes find *O*-notation informally describing asymptotically tight bounds, that is, what we have defined using  $\Theta$ -notation. In this book, however, when we write  $f(n) = O(g(n))$ , we are merely claiming that some constant multiple of  $g(n)$  is an asymptotic upper bound on  $f(n)$ , with no claim about how tight an upper bound it is. Distinguishing asymptotic upper bounds from asymptotically tight bounds is standard in the algorithms literature.

Using *O*-notation, we can often describe the running time of an algorithm merely by inspecting the algorithm’s overall structure. For example, the doubly nested loop structure of the insertion sort algorithm from Chapter 2 immediately yields an  $O(n^2)$  upper bound on the worst-case running time: the cost of each iteration of the inner loop is bounded from above by  $O(1)$  (constant), the indices  $i$

---

<sup>2</sup>The real problem is that our ordinary notation for functions does not distinguish functions from values. In  $\lambda$ -calculus, the parameters to a function are clearly specified: the function  $n^2$  could be written as  $\lambda n.n^2$ , or even  $\lambda r.r^2$ . Adopting a more rigorous notation, however, would complicate algebraic manipulations, and so we choose to tolerate the abuse.

and  $j$  are both at most  $n$ , and the inner loop is executed at most once for each of the  $n^2$  pairs of values for  $i$  and  $j$ .

Since  $O$ -notation describes an upper bound, when we use it to bound the worst-case running time of an algorithm, we have a bound on the running time of the algorithm on every input—the blanket statement we discussed earlier. Thus, the  $O(n^2)$  bound on worst-case running time of insertion sort also applies to its running time on every input. The  $\Theta(n^2)$  bound on the worst-case running time of insertion sort, however, does not imply a  $\Theta(n^2)$  bound on the running time of insertion sort on every input. For example, we saw in Chapter 2 that when the input is already sorted, insertion sort runs in  $\Theta(n)$  time.

Technically, it is an abuse to say that the running time of insertion sort is  $O(n^2)$ , since for a given  $n$ , the actual running time varies, depending on the particular input of size  $n$ . When we say “the running time is  $O(n^2)$ ,” we mean that there is a function  $f(n)$  that is  $O(n^2)$  such that for any value of  $n$ , no matter what particular input of size  $n$  is chosen, the running time on that input is bounded from above by the value  $f(n)$ . Equivalently, we mean that the worst-case running time is  $O(n^2)$ .

### $\Omega$ -notation

Just as  $O$ -notation provides an asymptotic *upper* bound on a function,  $\Omega$ -notation provides an **asymptotic lower bound**. For a given function  $g(n)$ , we denote by  $\Omega(g(n))$  (pronounced “big-omega of  $g$  of  $n$ ” or sometimes just “omega of  $g$  of  $n$ ”) the set of functions

$$\Omega(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that} \\ 0 \leq cg(n) \leq f(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}.$$

Figure 3.1(c) shows the intuition behind  $\Omega$ -notation. For all values  $n$  at or to the right of  $n_0$ , the value of  $f(n)$  is on or above  $cg(n)$ .

From the definitions of the asymptotic notations we have seen thus far, it is easy to prove the following important theorem (see Exercise 3.1-5).

#### **Theorem 3.1**

For any two functions  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$ , we have  $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$  if and only if  $f(n) = O(g(n))$  and  $f(n) = \Omega(g(n))$ . ■

As an example of the application of this theorem, our proof that  $an^2 + bn + c = \Theta(n^2)$  for any constants  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ , where  $a > 0$ , immediately implies that  $an^2 + bn + c = \Omega(n^2)$  and  $an^2 + bn + c = O(n^2)$ . In practice, rather than using Theorem 3.1 to obtain asymptotic upper and lower bounds from asymptotically tight bounds, as we did for this example, we usually use it to prove asymptotically tight bounds from asymptotic upper and lower bounds.

When we say that the *running time* (no modifier) of an algorithm is  $\Omega(g(n))$ , we mean that *no matter what particular input of size  $n$  is chosen for each value of  $n$* , the running time on that input is at least a constant times  $g(n)$ , for sufficiently large  $n$ . Equivalently, we are giving a lower bound on the best-case running time of an algorithm. For example, the best-case running time of insertion sort is  $\Omega(n)$ , which implies that the running time of insertion sort is  $\Omega(n)$ .

The running time of insertion sort therefore belongs to both  $\Omega(n)$  and  $O(n^2)$ , since it falls anywhere between a linear function of  $n$  and a quadratic function of  $n$ . Moreover, these bounds are asymptotically as tight as possible: for instance, the running time of insertion sort is not  $\Omega(n^2)$ , since there exists an input for which insertion sort runs in  $\Theta(n)$  time (e.g., when the input is already sorted). It is not contradictory, however, to say that the *worst-case* running time of insertion sort is  $\Omega(n^2)$ , since there exists an input that causes the algorithm to take  $\Omega(n^2)$  time.

### Asymptotic notation in equations and inequalities

We have already seen how asymptotic notation can be used within mathematical formulas. For example, in introducing  $O$ -notation, we wrote “ $n = O(n^2)$ .” We might also write  $2n^2 + 3n + 1 = 2n^2 + \Theta(n)$ . How do we interpret such formulas?

When the asymptotic notation stands alone (that is, not within a larger formula) on the right-hand side of an equation (or inequality), as in  $n = O(n^2)$ , we have already defined the equal sign to mean set membership:  $n \in O(n^2)$ . In general, however, when asymptotic notation appears in a formula, we interpret it as standing for some anonymous function that we do not care to name. For example, the formula  $2n^2 + 3n + 1 = 2n^2 + \Theta(n)$  means that  $2n^2 + 3n + 1 = 2n^2 + f(n)$ , where  $f(n)$  is some function in the set  $\Theta(n)$ . In this case, we let  $f(n) = 3n + 1$ , which indeed is in  $\Theta(n)$ .

Using asymptotic notation in this manner can help eliminate inessential detail and clutter in an equation. For example, in Chapter 2 we expressed the worst-case running time of merge sort as the recurrence

$$T(n) = 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n) .$$

If we are interested only in the asymptotic behavior of  $T(n)$ , there is no point in specifying all the lower-order terms exactly; they are all understood to be included in the anonymous function denoted by the term  $\Theta(n)$ .

The number of anonymous functions in an expression is understood to be equal to the number of times the asymptotic notation appears. For example, in the expression

$$\sum_{i=1}^n O(i) ,$$



there is only a single anonymous function (a function of  $i$ ). This expression is thus *not* the same as  $O(1) + O(2) + \cdots + O(n)$ , which doesn't really have a clean interpretation.

In some cases, asymptotic notation appears on the left-hand side of an equation, as in

$$2n^2 + \Theta(n) = \Theta(n^2) .$$

We interpret such equations using the following rule: *No matter how the anonymous functions are chosen on the left of the equal sign, there is a way to choose the anonymous functions on the right of the equal sign to make the equation valid.* Thus, our example means that for *any* function  $f(n) \in \Theta(n)$ , there is *some* function  $g(n) \in \Theta(n^2)$  such that  $2n^2 + f(n) = g(n)$  for all  $n$ . In other words, the right-hand side of an equation provides a coarser level of detail than the left-hand side.

We can chain together a number of such relationships, as in

$$\begin{aligned} 2n^2 + 3n + 1 &= 2n^2 + \Theta(n) \\ &= \Theta(n^2) . \end{aligned}$$

We can interpret each equation separately by the rules above. The first equation says that there is *some* function  $f(n) \in \Theta(n)$  such that  $2n^2 + 3n + 1 = 2n^2 + f(n)$  for all  $n$ . The second equation says that for *any* function  $g(n) \in \Theta(n)$  (such as the  $f(n)$  just mentioned), there is *some* function  $h(n) \in \Theta(n^2)$  such that  $2n^2 + g(n) = h(n)$  for all  $n$ . Note that this interpretation implies that  $2n^2 + 3n + 1 = \Theta(n^2)$ , which is what the chaining of equations intuitively gives us.

### ***o*-notation**

The asymptotic upper bound provided by  $O$ -notation may or may not be asymptotically tight. The bound  $2n^2 = O(n^2)$  is asymptotically tight, but the bound  $2n = O(n^2)$  is not. We use  $o$ -notation to denote an upper bound that is not asymptotically tight. We formally define  $o(g(n))$  ("little-oh of  $g$  of  $n$ ") as the set

$$o(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{for any positive constant } c > 0, \text{ there exists a constant } n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) < cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\} .$$

For example,  $2n = o(n^2)$ , but  $2n^2 \neq o(n^2)$ .

The definitions of  $O$ -notation and  $o$ -notation are similar. The main difference is that in  $f(n) = O(g(n))$ , the bound  $0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n)$  holds for *some* constant  $c > 0$ , but in  $f(n) = o(g(n))$ , the bound  $0 \leq f(n) < cg(n)$  holds for *all* constants  $c > 0$ . Intuitively, in  $o$ -notation, the function  $f(n)$  becomes insignificant relative to  $g(n)$  as  $n$  approaches infinity; that is,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{f(n)}{g(n)} = 0. \quad (3.1)$$

Some authors use this limit as a definition of the  $o$ -notation; the definition in this book also restricts the anonymous functions to be asymptotically nonnegative.

### **$\omega$ -notation**

By analogy,  $\omega$ -notation is to  $\Omega$ -notation as  $o$ -notation is to  $O$ -notation. We use  $\omega$ -notation to denote a lower bound that is not asymptotically tight. One way to define it is by

$f(n) \in \omega(g(n))$  if and only if  $g(n) \in o(f(n))$ .

Formally, however, we define  $\omega(g(n))$  (“little-omega of  $g$  of  $n$ ”) as the set

$$\omega(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{for any positive constant } c > 0, \text{ there exists a constant } n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq cg(n) < f(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}.$$

For example,  $n^2/2 = \omega(n)$ , but  $n^2/2 \neq \omega(n^2)$ . The relation  $f(n) = \omega(g(n))$  implies that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{f(n)}{g(n)} = \infty,$$

if the limit exists. That is,  $f(n)$  becomes arbitrarily large relative to  $g(n)$  as  $n$  approaches infinity.

### **Comparing functions**

Many of the relational properties of real numbers apply to asymptotic comparisons as well. For the following, assume that  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  are asymptotically positive.

#### **Transitivity:**

$$\begin{aligned} f(n) = \Theta(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = \Theta(h(n)) & \text{ imply } f(n) = \Theta(h(n)), \\ f(n) = O(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = O(h(n)) & \text{ imply } f(n) = O(h(n)), \\ f(n) = \Omega(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = \Omega(h(n)) & \text{ imply } f(n) = \Omega(h(n)), \\ f(n) = o(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = o(h(n)) & \text{ imply } f(n) = o(h(n)), \\ f(n) = \omega(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = \omega(h(n)) & \text{ imply } f(n) = \omega(h(n)). \end{aligned}$$

#### **Reflexivity:**

$$\begin{aligned} f(n) &= \Theta(f(n)), \\ f(n) &= O(f(n)), \\ f(n) &= \Omega(f(n)). \end{aligned}$$

**Symmetry:**

$$f(n) = \Theta(g(n)) \text{ if and only if } g(n) = \Theta(f(n)) .$$

**Transpose symmetry:**

$$f(n) = O(g(n)) \text{ if and only if } g(n) = \Omega(f(n)) ,$$

$$f(n) = o(g(n)) \text{ if and only if } g(n) = \omega(f(n)) .$$

Because these properties hold for asymptotic notations, we can draw an analogy between the asymptotic comparison of two functions  $f$  and  $g$  and the comparison of two real numbers  $a$  and  $b$ :

$$f(n) = O(g(n)) \quad \text{is like} \quad a \leq b ,$$

$$f(n) = \Omega(g(n)) \quad \text{is like} \quad a \geq b ,$$

$$f(n) = \Theta(g(n)) \quad \text{is like} \quad a = b ,$$

$$f(n) = o(g(n)) \quad \text{is like} \quad a < b ,$$

$$f(n) = \omega(g(n)) \quad \text{is like} \quad a > b .$$

We say that  $f(n)$  is **asymptotically smaller** than  $g(n)$  if  $f(n) = o(g(n))$ , and  $f(n)$  is **asymptotically larger** than  $g(n)$  if  $f(n) = \omega(g(n))$ .

One property of real numbers, however, does not carry over to asymptotic notation:

**Trichotomy:** For any two real numbers  $a$  and  $b$ , exactly one of the following must hold:  $a < b$ ,  $a = b$ , or  $a > b$ .

Although any two real numbers can be compared, not all functions are asymptotically comparable. That is, for two functions  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$ , it may be the case that neither  $f(n) = O(g(n))$  nor  $f(n) = \Omega(g(n))$  holds. For example, we cannot compare the functions  $n$  and  $n^{1+\sin n}$  using asymptotic notation, since the value of the exponent in  $n^{1+\sin n}$  oscillates between 0 and 2, taking on all values in between.

**Exercises****3.1-1**

Let  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  be asymptotically nonnegative functions. Using the basic definition of  $\Theta$ -notation, prove that  $\max(f(n), g(n)) = \Theta(f(n) + g(n))$ .

**3.1-2**

Show that for any real constants  $a$  and  $b$ , where  $b > 0$ ,

$$(n + a)^b = \Theta(n^b) . \tag{3.2}$$

**3.1-3**

Explain why the statement, “The running time of algorithm  $A$  is at least  $O(n^2)$ ,” is meaningless.

**3.1-4**

Is  $2^{n+1} = O(2^n)$ ? Is  $2^{2n} = O(2^n)$ ?

**3.1-5**

Prove Theorem 3.1.

**3.1-6**

Prove that the running time of an algorithm is  $\Theta(g(n))$  if and only if its worst-case running time is  $O(g(n))$  and its best-case running time is  $\Omega(g(n))$ .

**3.1-7**

Prove that  $o(g(n)) \cap \omega(g(n))$  is the empty set.

**3.1-8**

We can extend our notation to the case of two parameters  $n$  and  $m$  that can go to infinity independently at different rates. For a given function  $g(n, m)$ , we denote by  $O(g(n, m))$  the set of functions

$$O(g(n, m)) = \{f(n, m) : \text{there exist positive constants } c, n_0, \text{ and } m_0 \\ \text{such that } 0 \leq f(n, m) \leq cg(n, m) \\ \text{for all } n \geq n_0 \text{ or } m \geq m_0\}.$$

Give corresponding definitions for  $\Omega(g(n, m))$  and  $\Theta(g(n, m))$ .

## 3.2 Standard notations and common functions

This section reviews some standard mathematical functions and notations and explores the relationships among them. It also illustrates the use of the asymptotic notations.

### Monotonicity

A function  $f(n)$  is **monotonically increasing** if  $m \leq n$  implies  $f(m) \leq f(n)$ . Similarly, it is **monotonically decreasing** if  $m \leq n$  implies  $f(m) \geq f(n)$ . A function  $f(n)$  is **strictly increasing** if  $m < n$  implies  $f(m) < f(n)$  and **strictly decreasing** if  $m < n$  implies  $f(m) > f(n)$ .

### Floors and ceilings

For any real number  $x$ , we denote the greatest integer less than or equal to  $x$  by  $\lfloor x \rfloor$  (read “the floor of  $x$ ”) and the least integer greater than or equal to  $x$  by  $\lceil x \rceil$  (read “the ceiling of  $x$ ”). For all real  $x$ ,

$$x - 1 < \lfloor x \rfloor \leq x \leq \lceil x \rceil < x + 1 . \quad (3.3)$$

For any integer  $n$ ,

$$\lceil n/2 \rceil + \lfloor n/2 \rfloor = n ,$$

and for any real number  $x \geq 0$  and integers  $a, b > 0$ ,

$$\left\lceil \frac{\lfloor x/a \rfloor}{b} \right\rceil = \left\lceil \frac{x}{ab} \right\rceil , \quad (3.4)$$

$$\left\lfloor \frac{\lceil x/a \rceil}{b} \right\rfloor = \left\lfloor \frac{x}{ab} \right\rfloor , \quad (3.5)$$

$$\left\lceil \frac{a}{b} \right\rceil \leq \frac{a + (b - 1)}{b} , \quad (3.6)$$

$$\left\lfloor \frac{a}{b} \right\rfloor \geq \frac{a - (b - 1)}{b} . \quad (3.7)$$

The floor function  $f(x) = \lfloor x \rfloor$  is monotonically increasing, as is the ceiling function  $f(x) = \lceil x \rceil$ .

### Modular arithmetic

For any integer  $a$  and any positive integer  $n$ , the value  $a \bmod n$  is the **remainder** (or **residue**) of the quotient  $a/n$ :

$$a \bmod n = a - n \lfloor a/n \rfloor . \quad (3.8)$$

It follows that

$$0 \leq a \bmod n < n . \quad (3.9)$$

Given a well-defined notion of the remainder of one integer when divided by another, it is convenient to provide special notation to indicate equality of remainders. If  $(a \bmod n) = (b \bmod n)$ , we write  $a \equiv b \pmod{n}$  and say that  $a$  is **equivalent** to  $b$ , modulo  $n$ . In other words,  $a \equiv b \pmod{n}$  if  $a$  and  $b$  have the same remainder when divided by  $n$ . Equivalently,  $a \equiv b \pmod{n}$  if and only if  $n$  is a divisor of  $b - a$ . We write  $a \not\equiv b \pmod{n}$  if  $a$  is not equivalent to  $b$ , modulo  $n$ .

### Polynomials

Given a nonnegative integer  $d$ , a **polynomial in  $n$  of degree  $d$**  is a function  $p(n)$  of the form

$$p(n) = \sum_{i=0}^d a_i n^i ,$$

where the constants  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_d$  are the **coefficients** of the polynomial and  $a_d \neq 0$ . A polynomial is asymptotically positive if and only if  $a_d > 0$ . For an asymptotically positive polynomial  $p(n)$  of degree  $d$ , we have  $p(n) = \Theta(n^d)$ . For any real constant  $a \geq 0$ , the function  $n^a$  is monotonically increasing, and for any real constant  $a \leq 0$ , the function  $n^a$  is monotonically decreasing. We say that a function  $f(n)$  is **polynomially bounded** if  $f(n) = O(n^k)$  for some constant  $k$ .

### Exponentials

For all real  $a > 0$ ,  $m$ , and  $n$ , we have the following identities:

$$\begin{aligned} a^0 &= 1 , \\ a^1 &= a , \\ a^{-1} &= 1/a , \\ (a^m)^n &= a^{mn} , \\ (a^m)^n &= (a^n)^m , \\ a^m a^n &= a^{m+n} . \end{aligned}$$

For all  $n$  and  $a \geq 1$ , the function  $a^n$  is monotonically increasing in  $n$ . When convenient, we shall assume  $0^0 = 1$ .

We can relate the rates of growth of polynomials and exponentials by the following fact. For all real constants  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $a > 1$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^b}{a^n} = 0 , \tag{3.10}$$

from which we can conclude that

$$n^b = o(a^n) .$$

Thus, any exponential function with a base strictly greater than 1 grows faster than any polynomial function.

Using  $e$  to denote  $2.71828\dots$ , the base of the natural logarithm function, we have for all real  $x$ ,

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^i}{i!} , \tag{3.11}$$

where “!” denotes the factorial function defined later in this section. For all real  $x$ , we have the inequality

$$e^x \geq 1 + x, \quad (3.12)$$

where equality holds only when  $x = 0$ . When  $|x| \leq 1$ , we have the approximation

$$1 + x \leq e^x \leq 1 + x + x^2. \quad (3.13)$$

When  $x \rightarrow 0$ , the approximation of  $e^x$  by  $1 + x$  is quite good:

$$e^x = 1 + x + \Theta(x^2).$$

(In this equation, the asymptotic notation is used to describe the limiting behavior as  $x \rightarrow 0$  rather than as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ .) We have for all  $x$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right)^n = e^x. \quad (3.14)$$

### Logarithms

We shall use the following notations:

$$\lg n = \log_2 n \quad (\text{binary logarithm}),$$

$$\ln n = \log_e n \quad (\text{natural logarithm}),$$

$$\lg^k n = (\lg n)^k \quad (\text{exponentiation}),$$

$$\lg \lg n = \lg(\lg n) \quad (\text{composition}).$$

An important notational convention we shall adopt is that *logarithm functions will apply only to the next term in the formula*, so that  $\lg n + k$  will mean  $(\lg n) + k$  and not  $\lg(n + k)$ . If we hold  $b > 1$  constant, then for  $n > 0$ , the function  $\log_b n$  is strictly increasing.

For all real  $a > 0$ ,  $b > 0$ ,  $c > 0$ , and  $n$ ,

$$a = b^{\log_b a},$$

$$\log_c(ab) = \log_c a + \log_c b,$$

$$\log_b a^n = n \log_b a,$$

$$\log_b a = \frac{\log_c a}{\log_c b}, \quad (3.15)$$

$$\log_b(1/a) = -\log_b a,$$

$$\log_b a = \frac{1}{\log_a b},$$

$$a^{\log_b c} = c^{\log_b a}, \quad (3.16)$$

where, in each equation above, logarithm bases are not 1.

By equation (3.15), changing the base of a logarithm from one constant to another changes the value of the logarithm by only a constant factor, and so we shall often use the notation “ $\lg n$ ” when we don’t care about constant factors, such as in  $O$ -notation. Computer scientists find 2 to be the most natural base for logarithms because so many algorithms and data structures involve splitting a problem into two parts.

There is a simple series expansion for  $\ln(1 + x)$  when  $|x| < 1$ :

$$\ln(1 + x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \cdots .$$

We also have the following inequalities for  $x > -1$ :

$$\frac{x}{1+x} \leq \ln(1+x) \leq x , \quad (3.17)$$

where equality holds only for  $x = 0$ .

We say that a function  $f(n)$  is **polylogarithmically bounded** if  $f(n) = O(\lg^k n)$  for some constant  $k$ . We can relate the growth of polynomials and polylogarithms by substituting  $\lg n$  for  $n$  and  $2^a$  for  $a$  in equation (3.10), yielding

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\lg^b n}{(2^a)^{\lg n}} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\lg^b n}{n^a} = 0 .$$

From this limit, we can conclude that

$$\lg^b n = o(n^a)$$

for any constant  $a > 0$ . Thus, any positive polynomial function grows faster than any polylogarithmic function.

### Factorials

The notation  $n!$  (read “ $n$  factorial”) is defined for integers  $n \geq 0$  as

$$n! = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 0 , \\ n \cdot (n-1)! & \text{if } n > 0 . \end{cases}$$

Thus,  $n! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots n$ .

A weak upper bound on the factorial function is  $n! \leq n^n$ , since each of the  $n$  terms in the factorial product is at most  $n$ . **Stirling’s approximation**,

$$n! = \sqrt{2\pi n} \left(\frac{n}{e}\right)^n \left(1 + \Theta\left(\frac{1}{n}\right)\right) , \quad (3.18)$$



where  $e$  is the base of the natural logarithm, gives us a tighter upper bound, and a lower bound as well. As Exercise 3.2-3 asks you to prove,

$$\begin{aligned} n! &= o(n^n), \\ n! &= \omega(2^n), \\ \lg(n!) &= \Theta(n \lg n), \end{aligned} \tag{3.19}$$

where Stirling's approximation is helpful in proving equation (3.19). The following equation also holds for all  $n \geq 1$ :

$$n! = \sqrt{2\pi n} \left(\frac{n}{e}\right)^n e^{\alpha_n} \tag{3.20}$$

where

$$\frac{1}{12n+1} < \alpha_n < \frac{1}{12n}. \tag{3.21}$$

### Functional iteration

We use the notation  $f^{(i)}(n)$  to denote the function  $f(n)$  iteratively applied  $i$  times to an initial value of  $n$ . Formally, let  $f(n)$  be a function over the reals. For non-negative integers  $i$ , we recursively define

$$f^{(i)}(n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } i = 0, \\ f(f^{(i-1)}(n)) & \text{if } i > 0. \end{cases}$$

For example, if  $f(n) = 2n$ , then  $f^{(i)}(n) = 2^i n$ .

### The iterated logarithm function

We use the notation  $\lg^* n$  (read “log star of  $n$ ”) to denote the iterated logarithm, defined as follows. Let  $\lg^{(i)} n$  be as defined above, with  $f(n) = \lg n$ . Because the logarithm of a nonpositive number is undefined,  $\lg^{(i)} n$  is defined only if  $\lg^{(i-1)} n > 0$ . Be sure to distinguish  $\lg^{(i)} n$  (the logarithm function applied  $i$  times in succession, starting with argument  $n$ ) from  $\lg^i n$  (the logarithm of  $n$  raised to the  $i$ th power). Then we define the iterated logarithm function as

$$\lg^* n = \min \{i \geq 0 : \lg^{(i)} n \leq 1\}.$$

The iterated logarithm is a *very* slowly growing function:

$$\begin{aligned} \lg^* 2 &= 1, \\ \lg^* 4 &= 2, \\ \lg^* 16 &= 3, \\ \lg^* 65536 &= 4, \\ \lg^*(2^{65536}) &= 5. \end{aligned}$$

Since the number of atoms in the observable universe is estimated to be about  $10^{80}$ , which is much less than  $2^{65536}$ , we rarely encounter an input size  $n$  such that  $\lg^* n > 5$ .

### Fibonacci numbers

We define the *Fibonacci numbers* by the following recurrence:

$$\begin{aligned} F_0 &= 0, \\ F_1 &= 1, \\ F_i &= F_{i-1} + F_{i-2} \quad \text{for } i \geq 2. \end{aligned} \tag{3.22}$$

Thus, each Fibonacci number is the sum of the two previous ones, yielding the sequence

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, ... .

Fibonacci numbers are related to the *golden ratio*  $\phi$  and to its conjugate  $\hat{\phi}$ , which are the two roots of the equation

$$x^2 = x + 1 \tag{3.23}$$

and are given by the following formulas (see Exercise 3.2-6):

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \\ &= 1.61803 \dots, \\ \hat{\phi} &= \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \\ &= -.61803 \dots. \end{aligned} \tag{3.24}$$

Specifically, we have

$$F_i = \frac{\phi^i - \hat{\phi}^i}{\sqrt{5}},$$

which we can prove by induction (Exercise 3.2-7). Since  $|\hat{\phi}| < 1$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{|\hat{\phi}^i|}{\sqrt{5}} &< \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \\ &< \frac{1}{2}, \end{aligned}$$

which implies that

$$F_i = \left\lfloor \frac{\phi^i}{\sqrt{5}} + \frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor, \quad (3.25)$$

which is to say that the  $i$ th Fibonacci number  $F_i$  is equal to  $\phi^i / \sqrt{5}$  rounded to the nearest integer. Thus, Fibonacci numbers grow exponentially.

### Exercises

#### 3.2-1

Show that if  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  are monotonically increasing functions, then so are the functions  $f(n) + g(n)$  and  $f(g(n))$ , and if  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  are in addition nonnegative, then  $f(n) \cdot g(n)$  is monotonically increasing.

#### 3.2-2

Prove equation (3.16).

#### 3.2-3

Prove equation (3.19). Also prove that  $n! = \omega(2^n)$  and  $n! = o(n^n)$ .

#### 3.2-4 ★

Is the function  $\lceil \lg n \rceil!$  polynomially bounded? Is the function  $\lceil \lg \lg n \rceil!$  polynomially bounded?

#### 3.2-5 ★

Which is asymptotically larger:  $\lg(\lg^* n)$  or  $\lg^*(\lg n)$ ?

#### 3.2-6

Show that the golden ratio  $\phi$  and its conjugate  $\hat{\phi}$  both satisfy the equation  $x^2 = x + 1$ .

#### 3.2-7

Prove by induction that the  $i$ th Fibonacci number satisfies the equality

$$F_i = \frac{\phi^i - \hat{\phi}^i}{\sqrt{5}},$$

where  $\phi$  is the golden ratio and  $\hat{\phi}$  is its conjugate.

#### 3.2-8

Show that  $k \ln k = \Theta(n)$  implies  $k = \Theta(n / \ln n)$ .

---

**Problems**
**3-1 Asymptotic behavior of polynomials**

Let

$$p(n) = \sum_{i=0}^d a_i n^i,$$

where  $a_d > 0$ , be a degree- $d$  polynomial in  $n$ , and let  $k$  be a constant. Use the definitions of the asymptotic notations to prove the following properties.

- a. If  $k \geq d$ , then  $p(n) = O(n^k)$ .
- b. If  $k \leq d$ , then  $p(n) = \Omega(n^k)$ .
- c. If  $k = d$ , then  $p(n) = \Theta(n^k)$ .
- d. If  $k > d$ , then  $p(n) = o(n^k)$ .
- e. If  $k < d$ , then  $p(n) = \omega(n^k)$ .

**3-2 Relative asymptotic growths**

Indicate, for each pair of expressions  $(A, B)$  in the table below, whether  $A$  is  $O$ ,  $o$ ,  $\Omega$ ,  $\omega$ , or  $\Theta$  of  $B$ . Assume that  $k \geq 1$ ,  $\epsilon > 0$ , and  $c > 1$  are constants. Your answer should be in the form of the table with “yes” or “no” written in each box.

	$A$	$B$	$O$	$o$	$\Omega$	$\omega$	$\Theta$
a.	$\lg^k n$	$n^\epsilon$					
b.	$n^k$	$c^n$					
c.	$\sqrt{n}$	$n^{\sin n}$					
d.	$2^n$	$2^{n/2}$					
e.	$n^{\lg c}$	$c^{\lg n}$					
f.	$\lg(n!)$	$\lg(n^n)$					

**3-3 Ordering by asymptotic growth rates**

- a. Rank the following functions by order of growth; that is, find an arrangement  $g_1, g_2, \dots, g_{30}$  of the functions satisfying  $g_1 = \Omega(g_2)$ ,  $g_2 = \Omega(g_3)$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $g_{29} = \Omega(g_{30})$ . Partition your list into equivalence classes such that functions  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  are in the same class if and only if  $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$ .

$\lg(\lg^* n)$	$2^{\lg^* n}$	$(\sqrt{2})^{\lg n}$	$n^2$	$n!$	$(\lg n)!$
$(\frac{3}{2})^n$	$n^3$	$\lg^2 n$	$\lg(n!)$	$2^{2^n}$	$n^{1/\lg n}$
$\ln \ln n$	$\lg^* n$	$n \cdot 2^n$	$n^{\lg \lg n}$	$\ln n$	1
$2^{\lg n}$	$(\lg n)^{\lg n}$	$e^n$	$4^{\lg n}$	$(n+1)!$	$\sqrt{\lg n}$
$\lg^*(\lg n)$	$2^{\sqrt{2} \lg n}$	$n$	$2^n$	$n \lg n$	$2^{2^{n+1}}$

- b. Give an example of a single nonnegative function  $f(n)$  such that for all functions  $g_i(n)$  in part (a),  $f(n)$  is neither  $O(g_i(n))$  nor  $\Omega(g_i(n))$ .

### 3-4 Asymptotic notation properties

Let  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  be asymptotically positive functions. Prove or disprove each of the following conjectures.

- $f(n) = O(g(n))$  implies  $g(n) = O(f(n))$ .
- $f(n) + g(n) = \Theta(\min(f(n), g(n)))$ .
- $f(n) = O(g(n))$  implies  $\lg(f(n)) = O(\lg(g(n)))$ , where  $\lg(g(n)) \geq 1$  and  $f(n) \geq 1$  for all sufficiently large  $n$ .
- $f(n) = O(g(n))$  implies  $2^{f(n)} = O(2^{g(n)})$ .
- $f(n) = O((f(n))^2)$ .
- $f(n) = O(g(n))$  implies  $g(n) = \Omega(f(n))$ .
- $f(n) = \Theta(f(n/2))$ .
- $f(n) + o(f(n)) = \Theta(f(n))$ .

### 3-5 Variations on $O$ and $\Omega$

Some authors define  $\Omega$  in a slightly different way than we do; let's use  $\tilde{\Omega}$  (read "omega infinity") for this alternative definition. We say that  $f(n) = \tilde{\Omega}(g(n))$  if there exists a positive constant  $c$  such that  $f(n) \geq cg(n) \geq 0$  for infinitely many integers  $n$ .

- Show that for any two functions  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  that are asymptotically nonnegative, either  $f(n) = O(g(n))$  or  $f(n) = \tilde{\Omega}(g(n))$  or both, whereas this is not true if we use  $\Omega$  in place of  $\tilde{\Omega}$ .

- b.** Describe the potential advantages and disadvantages of using  $\tilde{\Omega}$  instead of  $\Omega$  to characterize the running times of programs.

Some authors also define  $O$  in a slightly different manner; let's use  $O'$  for the alternative definition. We say that  $f(n) = O'(g(n))$  if and only if  $|f(n)| = O(g(n))$ .

- c.** What happens to each direction of the “if and only if” in Theorem 3.1 if we substitute  $O'$  for  $O$  but still use  $\Omega$ ?

Some authors define  $\tilde{O}$  (read “soft-oh”) to mean  $O$  with logarithmic factors ignored:

$$\tilde{O}(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c, k, \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that} \\ 0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n) \lg^k(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}.$$

- d.** Define  $\tilde{\Omega}$  and  $\tilde{\Theta}$  in a similar manner. Prove the corresponding analog to Theorem 3.1.

### 3-6 Iterated functions

We can apply the iteration operator  $*$  used in the  $\lg^*$  function to any monotonically increasing function  $f(n)$  over the reals. For a given constant  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ , we define the iterated function  $f_c^*$  by

$$f_c^*(n) = \min \{i \geq 0 : f^{(i)}(n) \leq c\},$$

which need not be well defined in all cases. In other words, the quantity  $f_c^*(n)$  is the number of iterated applications of the function  $f$  required to reduce its argument down to  $c$  or less.

For each of the following functions  $f(n)$  and constants  $c$ , give as tight a bound as possible on  $f_c^*(n)$ .

	$f(n)$	$c$	$f_c^*(n)$
<b>a.</b>	$n - 1$	0	
<b>b.</b>	$\lg n$	1	
<b>c.</b>	$n/2$	1	
<b>d.</b>	$n/2$	2	
<b>e.</b>	$\sqrt{n}$	2	
<b>f.</b>	$\sqrt{n}$	1	
<b>g.</b>	$n^{1/3}$	2	
<b>h.</b>	$n / \lg n$	2	

---

**Chapter notes**

Knuth [209] traces the origin of the  $O$ -notation to a number-theory text by P. Bachmann in 1892. The  $o$ -notation was invented by E. Landau in 1909 for his discussion of the distribution of prime numbers. The  $\Omega$  and  $\Theta$  notations were advocated by Knuth [213] to correct the popular, but technically sloppy, practice in the literature of using  $O$ -notation for both upper and lower bounds. Many people continue to use the  $O$ -notation where the  $\Theta$ -notation is more technically precise. Further discussion of the history and development of asymptotic notations appears in works by Knuth [209, 213] and Brassard and Bratley [54].

Not all authors define the asymptotic notations in the same way, although the various definitions agree in most common situations. Some of the alternative definitions encompass functions that are not asymptotically nonnegative, as long as their absolute values are appropriately bounded.

Equation (3.20) is due to Robbins [297]. Other properties of elementary mathematical functions can be found in any good mathematical reference, such as Abramowitz and Stegun [1] or Zwillinger [362], or in a calculus book, such as Apostol [18] or Thomas et al. [334]. Knuth [209] and Graham, Knuth, and Patashnik [152] contain a wealth of material on discrete mathematics as used in computer science.

In Section 2.3.1, we saw how merge sort serves as an example of the divide-and-conquer paradigm. Recall that in divide-and-conquer, we solve a problem recursively, applying three steps at each level of the recursion:

**Divide** the problem into a number of subproblems that are smaller instances of the same problem.

**Conquer** the subproblems by solving them recursively. If the subproblem sizes are small enough, however, just solve the subproblems in a straightforward manner.

**Combine** the solutions to the subproblems into the solution for the original problem.

When the subproblems are large enough to solve recursively, we call that the *recursive case*. Once the subproblems become small enough that we no longer recurse, we say that the recursion “bottoms out” and that we have gotten down to the *base case*. Sometimes, in addition to subproblems that are smaller instances of the same problem, we have to solve subproblems that are not quite the same as the original problem. We consider solving such subproblems as part of the combine step.

In this chapter, we shall see more algorithms based on divide-and-conquer. The first one solves the maximum-subarray problem: it takes as input an array of numbers, and it determines the contiguous subarray whose values have the greatest sum. Then we shall see two divide-and-conquer algorithms for multiplying  $n \times n$  matrices. One runs in  $\Theta(n^3)$  time, which is no better than the straightforward method of multiplying square matrices. But the other, Strassen’s algorithm, runs in  $O(n^{2.81})$  time, which beats the straightforward method asymptotically.

### Recurrences

Recurrences go hand in hand with the divide-and-conquer paradigm, because they give us a natural way to characterize the running times of divide-and-conquer algorithms. A *recurrence* is an equation or inequality that describes a function in terms



of its value on smaller inputs. For example, in Section 2.3.2 we described the worst-case running time  $T(n)$  of the MERGE-SORT procedure by the recurrence

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1, \\ 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } n > 1, \end{cases} \quad (4.1)$$

whose solution we claimed to be  $T(n) = \Theta(n \lg n)$ .

Recurrences can take many forms. For example, a recursive algorithm might divide subproblems into unequal sizes, such as a 2/3-to-1/3 split. If the divide and combine steps take linear time, such an algorithm would give rise to the recurrence  $T(n) = T(2n/3) + T(n/3) + \Theta(n)$ .

Subproblems are not necessarily constrained to being a constant fraction of the original problem size. For example, a recursive version of linear search (see Exercise 2.1-3) would create just one subproblem containing only one element fewer than the original problem. Each recursive call would take constant time plus the time for the recursive calls it makes, yielding the recurrence  $T(n) = T(n - 1) + \Theta(1)$ .

This chapter offers three methods for solving recurrences—that is, for obtaining asymptotic “ $\Theta$ ” or “ $O$ ” bounds on the solution:

- In the **substitution method**, we guess a bound and then use mathematical induction to prove our guess correct.
- The **recursion-tree method** converts the recurrence into a tree whose nodes represent the costs incurred at various levels of the recursion. We use techniques for bounding summations to solve the recurrence.
- The **master method** provides bounds for recurrences of the form

$$T(n) = aT(n/b) + f(n), \quad (4.2)$$

where  $a \geq 1$ ,  $b > 1$ , and  $f(n)$  is a given function. Such recurrences arise frequently. A recurrence of the form in equation (4.2) characterizes a divide-and-conquer algorithm that creates  $a$  subproblems, each of which is  $1/b$  the size of the original problem, and in which the divide and combine steps together take  $f(n)$  time.

To use the master method, you will need to memorize three cases, but once you do that, you will easily be able to determine asymptotic bounds for many simple recurrences. We will use the master method to determine the running times of the divide-and-conquer algorithms for the maximum-subarray problem and for matrix multiplication, as well as for other algorithms based on divide-and-conquer elsewhere in this book.

Occasionally, we shall see recurrences that are not equalities but rather inequalities, such as  $T(n) \leq 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n)$ . Because such a recurrence states only an upper bound on  $T(n)$ , we will couch its solution using  $O$ -notation rather than  $\Theta$ -notation. Similarly, if the inequality were reversed to  $T(n) \geq 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n)$ , then because the recurrence gives only a lower bound on  $T(n)$ , we would use  $\Omega$ -notation in its solution.

### Technicalities in recurrences

In practice, we neglect certain technical details when we state and solve recurrences. For example, if we call MERGE-SORT on  $n$  elements when  $n$  is odd, we end up with subproblems of size  $\lfloor n/2 \rfloor$  and  $\lceil n/2 \rceil$ . Neither size is actually  $n/2$ , because  $n/2$  is not an integer when  $n$  is odd. Technically, the recurrence describing the worst-case running time of MERGE-SORT is really

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1, \\ T(\lceil n/2 \rceil) + T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } n > 1. \end{cases} \quad (4.3)$$

Boundary conditions represent another class of details that we typically ignore. Since the running time of an algorithm on a constant-sized input is a constant, the recurrences that arise from the running times of algorithms generally have  $T(n) = \Theta(1)$  for sufficiently small  $n$ . Consequently, for convenience, we shall generally omit statements of the boundary conditions of recurrences and assume that  $T(n)$  is constant for small  $n$ . For example, we normally state recurrence (4.1) as

$$T(n) = 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n), \quad (4.4)$$

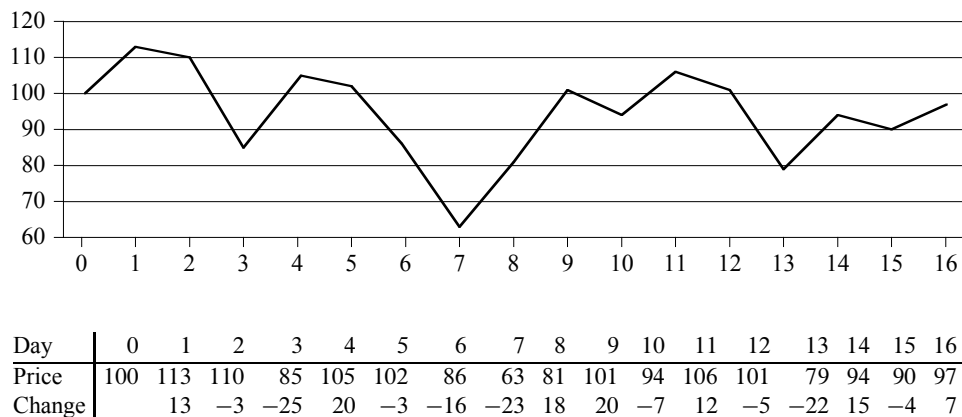
without explicitly giving values for small  $n$ . The reason is that although changing the value of  $T(1)$  changes the exact solution to the recurrence, the solution typically doesn't change by more than a constant factor, and so the order of growth is unchanged.

When we state and solve recurrences, we often omit floors, ceilings, and boundary conditions. We forge ahead without these details and later determine whether or not they matter. They usually do not, but you should know when they do. Experience helps, and so do some theorems stating that these details do not affect the asymptotic bounds of many recurrences characterizing divide-and-conquer algorithms (see Theorem 4.1). In this chapter, however, we shall address some of these details and illustrate the fine points of recurrence solution methods.

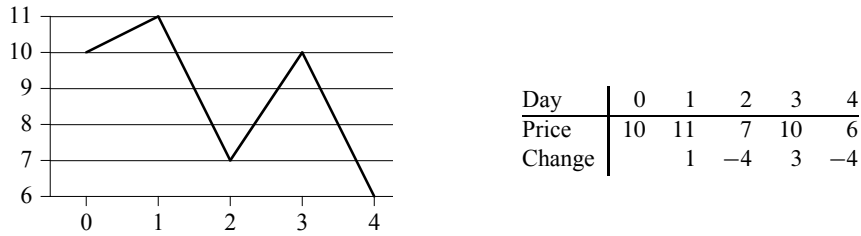
## 4.1 The maximum-subarray problem

Suppose that you have been offered the opportunity to invest in the Volatile Chemical Corporation. Like the chemicals the company produces, the stock price of the Volatile Chemical Corporation is rather volatile. You are allowed to buy one unit of stock only one time and then sell it at a later date, buying and selling after the close of trading for the day. To compensate for this restriction, you are allowed to learn what the price of the stock will be in the future. Your goal is to maximize your profit. Figure 4.1 shows the price of the stock over a 17-day period. You may buy the stock at any one time, starting after day 0, when the price is \$100 per share. Of course, you would want to “buy low, sell high”—buy at the lowest possible price and later on sell at the highest possible price—to maximize your profit. Unfortunately, you might not be able to buy at the lowest price and then sell at the highest price within a given period. In Figure 4.1, the lowest price occurs after day 7, which occurs after the highest price, after day 1.

You might think that you can always maximize profit by either buying at the lowest price or selling at the highest price. For example, in Figure 4.1, we would maximize profit by buying at the lowest price, after day 7. If this strategy always worked, then it would be easy to determine how to maximize profit: find the highest and lowest prices, and then work left from the highest price to find the lowest prior price, work right from the lowest price to find the highest later price, and take the pair with the greater difference. Figure 4.2 shows a simple counterexample,



**Figure 4.1** Information about the price of stock in the Volatile Chemical Corporation after the close of trading over a period of 17 days. The horizontal axis of the chart indicates the day, and the vertical axis shows the price. The bottom row of the table gives the change in price from the previous day.



**Figure 4.2** An example showing that the maximum profit does not always start at the lowest price or end at the highest price. Again, the horizontal axis indicates the day, and the vertical axis shows the price. Here, the maximum profit of \$3 per share would be earned by buying after day 2 and selling after day 3. The price of \$7 after day 2 is not the lowest price overall, and the price of \$10 after day 3 is not the highest price overall.

demonstrating that the maximum profit sometimes comes neither by buying at the lowest price nor by selling at the highest price.

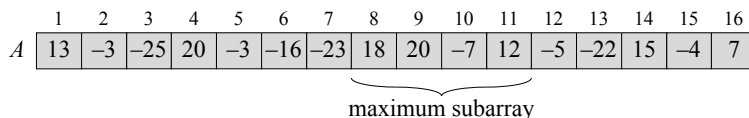
### A brute-force solution

We can easily devise a brute-force solution to this problem: just try every possible pair of buy and sell dates in which the buy date precedes the sell date. A period of  $n$  days has  $\binom{n}{2}$  such pairs of dates. Since  $\binom{n}{2}$  is  $\Theta(n^2)$ , and the best we can hope for is to evaluate each pair of dates in constant time, this approach would take  $\Omega(n^2)$  time. Can we do better?

### A transformation

In order to design an algorithm with an  $o(n^2)$  running time, we will look at the input in a slightly different way. We want to find a sequence of days over which the net change from the first day to the last is maximum. Instead of looking at the daily prices, let us instead consider the daily change in price, where the change on day  $i$  is the difference between the prices after day  $i - 1$  and after day  $i$ . The table in Figure 4.1 shows these daily changes in the bottom row. If we treat this row as an array  $A$ , shown in Figure 4.3, we now want to find the nonempty, contiguous subarray of  $A$  whose values have the largest sum. We call this contiguous subarray the **maximum subarray**. For example, in the array of Figure 4.3, the maximum subarray of  $A[1 \dots 16]$  is  $A[8 \dots 11]$ , with the sum 43. Thus, you would want to buy the stock just before day 8 (that is, after day 7) and sell it after day 11, earning a profit of \$43 per share.

At first glance, this transformation does not help. We still need to check  $\binom{n-1}{2} = \Theta(n^2)$  subarrays for a period of  $n$  days. Exercise 4.1-2 asks you to show



**Figure 4.3** The change in stock prices as a maximum-subarray problem. Here, the subarray  $A[8 \dots 11]$ , with sum 43, has the greatest sum of any contiguous subarray of array  $A$ .

that although computing the cost of one subarray might take time proportional to the length of the subarray, when computing all  $\Theta(n^2)$  subarray sums, we can organize the computation so that each subarray sum takes  $O(1)$  time, given the values of previously computed subarray sums, so that the brute-force solution takes  $\Theta(n^2)$  time.

So let us seek a more efficient solution to the maximum-subarray problem. When doing so, we will usually speak of “a” maximum subarray rather than “the” maximum subarray, since there could be more than one subarray that achieves the maximum sum.

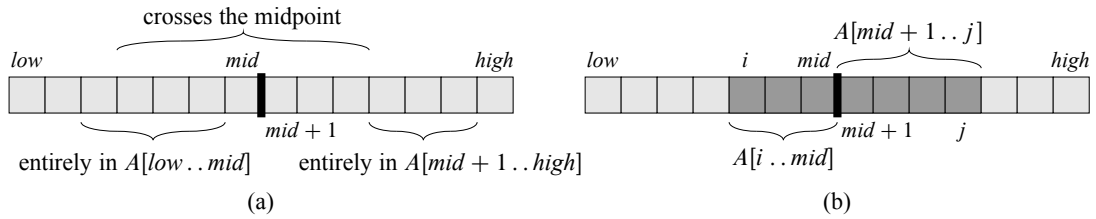
The maximum-subarray problem is interesting only when the array contains some negative numbers. If all the array entries were nonnegative, then the maximum-subarray problem would present no challenge, since the entire array would give the greatest sum.

### A solution using divide-and-conquer

Let’s think about how we might solve the maximum-subarray problem using the divide-and-conquer technique. Suppose we want to find a maximum subarray of the subarray  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{high}]$ . Divide-and-conquer suggests that we divide the subarray into two subarrays of as equal size as possible. That is, we find the midpoint, say  $\text{mid}$ , of the subarray, and consider the subarrays  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{mid}]$  and  $A[\text{mid} + 1 \dots \text{high}]$ . As Figure 4.4(a) shows, any contiguous subarray  $A[i \dots j]$  of  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{high}]$  must lie in exactly one of the following places:

- entirely in the subarray  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{mid}]$ , so that  $\text{low} \leq i \leq j \leq \text{mid}$ ,
- entirely in the subarray  $A[\text{mid} + 1 \dots \text{high}]$ , so that  $\text{mid} < i \leq j \leq \text{high}$ , or
- crossing the midpoint, so that  $\text{low} \leq i \leq \text{mid} < j \leq \text{high}$ .

Therefore, a maximum subarray of  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{high}]$  must lie in exactly one of these places. In fact, a maximum subarray of  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{high}]$  must have the greatest sum over all subarrays entirely in  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{mid}]$ , entirely in  $A[\text{mid} + 1 \dots \text{high}]$ , or crossing the midpoint. We can find maximum subarrays of  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{mid}]$  and  $A[\text{mid} + 1 \dots \text{high}]$  recursively, because these two subproblems are smaller instances of the problem of finding a maximum subarray. Thus, all that is left to do is find a



**Figure 4.4** (a) Possible locations of subarrays of  $A[low..high]$ : entirely in  $A[low..mid]$ , entirely in  $A[mid+1..high]$ , or crossing the midpoint  $mid$ . (b) Any subarray of  $A[low..high]$  crossing the midpoint comprises two subarrays  $A[i..mid]$  and  $A[mid+1..j]$ , where  $low \leq i \leq mid$  and  $mid < j \leq high$ .

maximum subarray that crosses the midpoint, and take a subarray with the largest sum of the three.

We can easily find a maximum subarray crossing the midpoint in time linear in the size of the subarray  $A[low..high]$ . This problem is *not* a smaller instance of our original problem, because it has the added restriction that the subarray it chooses must cross the midpoint. As Figure 4.4(b) shows, any subarray crossing the midpoint is itself made of two subarrays  $A[i..mid]$  and  $A[mid+1..j]$ , where  $low \leq i \leq mid$  and  $mid < j \leq high$ . Therefore, we just need to find maximum subarrays of the form  $A[i..mid]$  and  $A[mid+1..j]$  and then combine them. The procedure `FIND-MAX-CROSSING-SUBARRAY` takes as input the array  $A$  and the indices  $low$ ,  $mid$ , and  $high$ , and it returns a tuple containing the indices demarcating a maximum subarray that crosses the midpoint, along with the sum of the values in a maximum subarray.

`FIND-MAX-CROSSING-SUBARRAY`( $A, low, mid, high$ )

```

1  left-sum =  $-\infty$ 
2  sum = 0
3  for  $i = mid$  downto  $low$ 
4      sum = sum +  $A[i]$ 
5      if sum > left-sum
6          left-sum = sum
7          max-left =  $i$ 
8  right-sum =  $-\infty$ 
9  sum = 0
10 for  $j = mid + 1$  to  $high$ 
11     sum = sum +  $A[j]$ 
12     if sum > right-sum
13         right-sum = sum
14         max-right =  $j$ 
15 return (max-left, max-right, left-sum + right-sum)
```

This procedure works as follows. Lines 1–7 find a maximum subarray of the left half,  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{mid}]$ . Since this subarray must contain  $A[\text{mid}]$ , the **for** loop of lines 3–7 starts the index  $i$  at  $\text{mid}$  and works down to  $\text{low}$ , so that every subarray it considers is of the form  $A[i \dots \text{mid}]$ . Lines 1–2 initialize the variables  $\text{left-sum}$ , which holds the greatest sum found so far, and  $\text{sum}$ , holding the sum of the entries in  $A[i \dots \text{mid}]$ . Whenever we find, in line 5, a subarray  $A[i \dots \text{mid}]$  with a sum of values greater than  $\text{left-sum}$ , we update  $\text{left-sum}$  to this subarray’s sum in line 6, and in line 7 we update the variable  $\text{max-left}$  to record this index  $i$ . Lines 8–14 work analogously for the right half,  $A[\text{mid} + 1 \dots \text{high}]$ . Here, the **for** loop of lines 10–14 starts the index  $j$  at  $\text{mid} + 1$  and works up to  $\text{high}$ , so that every subarray it considers is of the form  $A[\text{mid} + 1 \dots j]$ . Finally, line 15 returns the indices  $\text{max-left}$  and  $\text{max-right}$  that demarcate a maximum subarray crossing the midpoint, along with the sum  $\text{left-sum} + \text{right-sum}$  of the values in the subarray  $A[\text{max-left} \dots \text{max-right}]$ .

If the subarray  $A[\text{low} \dots \text{high}]$  contains  $n$  entries (so that  $n = \text{high} - \text{low} + 1$ ), we claim that the call  $\text{FIND-MAX-CROSSING-SUBARRAY}(A, \text{low}, \text{mid}, \text{high})$  takes  $\Theta(n)$  time. Since each iteration of each of the two **for** loops takes  $\Theta(1)$  time, we just need to count up how many iterations there are altogether. The **for** loop of lines 3–7 makes  $\text{mid} - \text{low} + 1$  iterations, and the **for** loop of lines 10–14 makes  $\text{high} - \text{mid}$  iterations, and so the total number of iterations is

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{mid} - \text{low} + 1) + (\text{high} - \text{mid}) &= \text{high} - \text{low} + 1 \\ &= n. \end{aligned}$$

With a linear-time  $\text{FIND-MAX-CROSSING-SUBARRAY}$  procedure in hand, we can write pseudocode for a divide-and-conquer algorithm to solve the maximum-subarray problem:

$\text{FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY}(A, \text{low}, \text{high})$

```

1  if  $\text{high} == \text{low}$ 
2      return  $(\text{low}, \text{high}, A[\text{low}])$            // base case: only one element
3  else  $\text{mid} = \lfloor (\text{low} + \text{high})/2 \rfloor$ 
4       $(\text{left-low}, \text{left-high}, \text{left-sum}) =$ 
           $\text{FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY}(A, \text{low}, \text{mid})$ 
5       $(\text{right-low}, \text{right-high}, \text{right-sum}) =$ 
           $\text{FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY}(A, \text{mid} + 1, \text{high})$ 
6       $(\text{cross-low}, \text{cross-high}, \text{cross-sum}) =$ 
           $\text{FIND-MAX-CROSSING-SUBARRAY}(A, \text{low}, \text{mid}, \text{high})$ 
7      if  $\text{left-sum} \geq \text{right-sum}$  and  $\text{left-sum} \geq \text{cross-sum}$ 
8          return  $(\text{left-low}, \text{left-high}, \text{left-sum})$ 
9      elseif  $\text{right-sum} \geq \text{left-sum}$  and  $\text{right-sum} \geq \text{cross-sum}$ 
10         return  $(\text{right-low}, \text{right-high}, \text{right-sum})$ 
11     else return  $(\text{cross-low}, \text{cross-high}, \text{cross-sum})$ 
```

The initial call  $\text{FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY}(A, 1, A.length)$  will find a maximum subarray of  $A[1..n]$ .

Similar to  $\text{FIND-MAX-CROSSING-SUBARRAY}$ , the recursive procedure  $\text{FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY}$  returns a tuple containing the indices that demarcate a maximum subarray, along with the sum of the values in a maximum subarray. Line 1 tests for the base case, where the subarray has just one element. A subarray with just one element has only one subarray—itsself—and so line 2 returns a tuple with the starting and ending indices of just the one element, along with its value. Lines 3–11 handle the recursive case. Line 3 does the divide part, computing the index  $mid$  of the midpoint. Let's refer to the subarray  $A[low..mid]$  as the **left subarray** and to  $A[mid + 1..high]$  as the **right subarray**. Because we know that the subarray  $A[low..high]$  contains at least two elements, each of the left and right subarrays must have at least one element. Lines 4 and 5 conquer by recursively finding maximum subarrays within the left and right subarrays, respectively. Lines 6–11 form the combine part. Line 6 finds a maximum subarray that crosses the midpoint. (Recall that because line 6 solves a subproblem that is not a smaller instance of the original problem, we consider it to be in the combine part.) Line 7 tests whether the left subarray contains a subarray with the maximum sum, and line 8 returns that maximum subarray. Otherwise, line 9 tests whether the right subarray contains a subarray with the maximum sum, and line 10 returns that maximum subarray. If neither the left nor right subarrays contain a subarray achieving the maximum sum, then a maximum subarray must cross the midpoint, and line 11 returns it.

### Analyzing the divide-and-conquer algorithm

Next we set up a recurrence that describes the running time of the recursive  $\text{FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY}$  procedure. As we did when we analyzed merge sort in Section 2.3.2, we make the simplifying assumption that the original problem size is a power of 2, so that all subproblem sizes are integers. We denote by  $T(n)$  the running time of  $\text{FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY}$  on a subarray of  $n$  elements. For starters, line 1 takes constant time. The base case, when  $n = 1$ , is easy: line 2 takes constant time, and so

$$T(1) = \Theta(1). \quad (4.5)$$

The recursive case occurs when  $n > 1$ . Lines 1 and 3 take constant time. Each of the subproblems solved in lines 4 and 5 is on a subarray of  $n/2$  elements (our assumption that the original problem size is a power of 2 ensures that  $n/2$  is an integer), and so we spend  $T(n/2)$  time solving each of them. Because we have to solve two subproblems—for the left subarray and for the right subarray—the contribution to the running time from lines 4 and 5 comes to  $2T(n/2)$ . As we have



already seen, the call to `FIND-MAX-CROSSING-SUBARRAY` in line 6 takes  $\Theta(n)$  time. Lines 7–11 take only  $\Theta(1)$  time. For the recursive case, therefore, we have

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= \Theta(1) + 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n) + \Theta(1) \\ &= 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n). \end{aligned} \quad (4.6)$$

Combining equations (4.5) and (4.6) gives us a recurrence for the running time  $T(n)$  of `FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY`:

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1, \\ 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } n > 1. \end{cases} \quad (4.7)$$

This recurrence is the same as recurrence (4.1) for merge sort. As we shall see from the master method in Section 4.5, this recurrence has the solution  $T(n) = \Theta(n \lg n)$ . You might also revisit the recursion tree in Figure 2.5 to understand why the solution should be  $T(n) = \Theta(n \lg n)$ .

Thus, we see that the divide-and-conquer method yields an algorithm that is asymptotically faster than the brute-force method. With merge sort and now the maximum-subarray problem, we begin to get an idea of how powerful the divide-and-conquer method can be. Sometimes it will yield the asymptotically fastest algorithm for a problem, and other times we can do even better. As Exercise 4.1-5 shows, there is in fact a linear-time algorithm for the maximum-subarray problem, and it does not use divide-and-conquer.

## Exercises

### 4.1-1

What does `FIND-MAXIMUM-SUBARRAY` return when all elements of  $A$  are negative?

### 4.1-2

Write pseudocode for the brute-force method of solving the maximum-subarray problem. Your procedure should run in  $\Theta(n^2)$  time.

### 4.1-3

Implement both the brute-force and recursive algorithms for the maximum-subarray problem on your own computer. What problem size  $n_0$  gives the crossover point at which the recursive algorithm beats the brute-force algorithm? Then, change the base case of the recursive algorithm to use the brute-force algorithm whenever the problem size is less than  $n_0$ . Does that change the crossover point?

### 4.1-4

Suppose we change the definition of the maximum-subarray problem to allow the result to be an empty subarray, where the sum of the values of an empty subar-

ray is 0. How would you change any of the algorithms that do not allow empty subarrays to permit an empty subarray to be the result?

#### 4.1-5

Use the following ideas to develop a nonrecursive, linear-time algorithm for the maximum-subarray problem. Start at the left end of the array, and progress toward the right, keeping track of the maximum subarray seen so far. Knowing a maximum subarray of  $A[1 \dots j]$ , extend the answer to find a maximum subarray ending at index  $j + 1$  by using the following observation: a maximum subarray of  $A[1 \dots j + 1]$  is either a maximum subarray of  $A[1 \dots j]$  or a subarray  $A[i \dots j + 1]$ , for some  $1 \leq i \leq j + 1$ . Determine a maximum subarray of the form  $A[i \dots j + 1]$  in constant time based on knowing a maximum subarray ending at index  $j$ .

---

## 4.2 Strassen's algorithm for matrix multiplication

If you have seen matrices before, then you probably know how to multiply them. (Otherwise, you should read Section D.1 in Appendix D.) If  $A = (a_{ij})$  and  $B = (b_{ij})$  are square  $n \times n$  matrices, then in the product  $C = A \cdot B$ , we define the entry  $c_{ij}$ , for  $i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , by

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik} \cdot b_{kj} . \quad (4.8)$$

We must compute  $n^2$  matrix entries, and each is the sum of  $n$  values. The following procedure takes  $n \times n$  matrices  $A$  and  $B$  and multiplies them, returning their  $n \times n$  product  $C$ . We assume that each matrix has an attribute *rows*, giving the number of rows in the matrix.

SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY( $A, B$ )

```

1   $n = A.rows$ 
2  let  $C$  be a new  $n \times n$  matrix
3  for  $i = 1$  to  $n$ 
4      for  $j = 1$  to  $n$ 
5           $c_{ij} = 0$ 
6          for  $k = 1$  to  $n$ 
7               $c_{ij} = c_{ij} + a_{ik} \cdot b_{kj}$ 
8  return  $C$ 
```

The SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY procedure works as follows. The **for** loop of lines 3–7 computes the entries of each row  $i$ , and within a given row  $i$ , the

**for** loop of lines 4–7 computes each of the entries  $c_{ij}$ , for each column  $j$ . Line 5 initializes  $c_{ij}$  to 0 as we start computing the sum given in equation (4.8), and each iteration of the **for** loop of lines 6–7 adds in one more term of equation (4.8).

Because each of the triply-nested **for** loops runs exactly  $n$  iterations, and each execution of line 7 takes constant time, the SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY procedure takes  $\Theta(n^3)$  time.

You might at first think that any matrix multiplication algorithm must take  $\Omega(n^3)$  time, since the natural definition of matrix multiplication requires that many multiplications. You would be incorrect, however: we have a way to multiply matrices in  $o(n^3)$  time. In this section, we shall see Strassen's remarkable recursive algorithm for multiplying  $n \times n$  matrices. It runs in  $\Theta(n^{\lg 7})$  time, which we shall show in Section 4.5. Since  $\lg 7$  lies between 2.80 and 2.81, Strassen's algorithm runs in  $O(n^{2.81})$  time, which is asymptotically better than the simple SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY procedure.

### A simple divide-and-conquer algorithm

To keep things simple, when we use a divide-and-conquer algorithm to compute the matrix product  $C = A \cdot B$ , we assume that  $n$  is an exact power of 2 in each of the  $n \times n$  matrices. We make this assumption because in each divide step, we will divide  $n \times n$  matrices into four  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices, and by assuming that  $n$  is an exact power of 2, we are guaranteed that as long as  $n \geq 2$ , the dimension  $n/2$  is an integer.

Suppose that we partition each of  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  into four  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} \end{pmatrix}, \quad C = \begin{pmatrix} C_{11} & C_{12} \\ C_{21} & C_{22} \end{pmatrix}, \quad (4.9)$$

so that we rewrite the equation  $C = A \cdot B$  as

$$\begin{pmatrix} C_{11} & C_{12} \\ C_{21} & C_{22} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.10)$$

Equation (4.10) corresponds to the four equations

$$C_{11} = A_{11} \cdot B_{11} + A_{12} \cdot B_{21}, \quad (4.11)$$

$$C_{12} = A_{11} \cdot B_{12} + A_{12} \cdot B_{22}, \quad (4.12)$$

$$C_{21} = A_{21} \cdot B_{11} + A_{22} \cdot B_{21}, \quad (4.13)$$

$$C_{22} = A_{21} \cdot B_{12} + A_{22} \cdot B_{22}. \quad (4.14)$$

Each of these four equations specifies two multiplications of  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices and the addition of their  $n/2 \times n/2$  products. We can use these equations to create a straightforward, recursive, divide-and-conquer algorithm:

SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE( $A, B$ )

```

1   $n = A.rows$ 
2  let  $C$  be a new  $n \times n$  matrix
3  if  $n == 1$ 
4       $c_{11} = a_{11} \cdot b_{11}$ 
5  else partition  $A, B$ , and  $C$  as in equations (4.9)
6       $C_{11} = \text{SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE}(A_{11}, B_{11})$ 
           + SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE( $A_{12}, B_{21}$ )
7       $C_{12} = \text{SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE}(A_{11}, B_{12})$ 
           + SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE( $A_{12}, B_{22}$ )
8       $C_{21} = \text{SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE}(A_{21}, B_{11})$ 
           + SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE( $A_{22}, B_{21}$ )
9       $C_{22} = \text{SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE}(A_{21}, B_{12})$ 
           + SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE( $A_{22}, B_{22}$ )
10 return  $C$ 

```

This pseudocode glosses over one subtle but important implementation detail. How do we partition the matrices in line 5? If we were to create 12 new  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices, we would spend  $\Theta(n^2)$  time copying entries. In fact, we can partition the matrices without copying entries. The trick is to use index calculations. We identify a submatrix by a range of row indices and a range of column indices of the original matrix. We end up representing a submatrix a little differently from how we represent the original matrix, which is the subtlety we are glossing over. The advantage is that, since we can specify submatrices by index calculations, executing line 5 takes only  $\Theta(1)$  time (although we shall see that it makes no difference asymptotically to the overall running time whether we copy or partition in place).

Now, we derive a recurrence to characterize the running time of SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE. Let  $T(n)$  be the time to multiply two  $n \times n$  matrices using this procedure. In the base case, when  $n = 1$ , we perform just the one scalar multiplication in line 4, and so

$$T(1) = \Theta(1). \quad (4.15)$$

The recursive case occurs when  $n > 1$ . As discussed, partitioning the matrices in line 5 takes  $\Theta(1)$  time, using index calculations. In lines 6–9, we recursively call SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE a total of eight times. Because each recursive call multiplies two  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices, thereby contributing  $T(n/2)$  to the overall running time, the time taken by all eight recursive calls is  $8T(n/2)$ . We also must account for the four matrix additions in lines 6–9. Each of these matrices contains  $n^2/4$  entries, and so each of the four matrix additions takes  $\Theta(n^2)$  time. Since the number of matrix additions is a constant, the total time spent adding ma-

trices in lines 6–9 is  $\Theta(n^2)$ . (Again, we use index calculations to place the results of the matrix additions into the correct positions of matrix  $C$ , with an overhead of  $\Theta(1)$  time per entry.) The total time for the recursive case, therefore, is the sum of the partitioning time, the time for all the recursive calls, and the time to add the matrices resulting from the recursive calls:

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= \Theta(1) + 8T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2) \\ &= 8T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2) . \end{aligned} \tag{4.16}$$

Notice that if we implemented partitioning by copying matrices, which would cost  $\Theta(n^2)$  time, the recurrence would not change, and hence the overall running time would increase by only a constant factor.

Combining equations (4.15) and (4.16) gives us the recurrence for the running time of SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE:

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1 , \\ 8T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2) & \text{if } n > 1 . \end{cases} \tag{4.17}$$

As we shall see from the master method in Section 4.5, recurrence (4.17) has the solution  $T(n) = \Theta(n^3)$ . Thus, this simple divide-and-conquer approach is no faster than the straightforward SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY procedure.

Before we continue on to examining Strassen's algorithm, let us review where the components of equation (4.16) came from. Partitioning each  $n \times n$  matrix by index calculation takes  $\Theta(1)$  time, but we have two matrices to partition. Although you could say that partitioning the two matrices takes  $\Theta(2)$  time, the constant of 2 is subsumed by the  $\Theta$ -notation. Adding two matrices, each with, say,  $k$  entries, takes  $\Theta(k)$  time. Since the matrices we add each have  $n^2/4$  entries, you could say that adding each pair takes  $\Theta(n^2/4)$  time. Again, however, the  $\Theta$ -notation subsumes the constant factor of  $1/4$ , and we say that adding two  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices takes  $\Theta(n^2)$  time. We have four such matrix additions, and once again, instead of saying that they take  $\Theta(4n^2)$  time, we say that they take  $\Theta(n^2)$  time. (Of course, you might observe that we could say that the four matrix additions take  $\Theta(4n^2/4)$  time, and that  $4n^2/4 = n^2$ , but the point here is that  $\Theta$ -notation subsumes constant factors, whatever they are.) Thus, we end up with two terms of  $\Theta(n^2)$ , which we can combine into one.

When we account for the eight recursive calls, however, we cannot just subsume the constant factor of 8. In other words, we must say that together they take  $8T(n/2)$  time, rather than just  $T(n/2)$  time. You can get a feel for why by looking back at the recursion tree in Figure 2.5, for recurrence (2.1) (which is identical to recurrence (4.7)), with the recursive case  $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n)$ . The factor of 2 determined how many children each tree node had, which in turn determined how many terms contributed to the sum at each level of the tree. If we were to ignore

the factor of 8 in equation (4.16) or the factor of 2 in recurrence (4.1), the recursion tree would just be linear, rather than “bushy,” and each level would contribute only one term to the sum.

Bear in mind, therefore, that although asymptotic notation subsumes constant multiplicative factors, recursive notation such as  $T(n/2)$  does not.

### Strassen's method

The key to Strassen's method is to make the recursion tree slightly less bushy. That is, instead of performing eight recursive multiplications of  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices, it performs only seven. The cost of eliminating one matrix multiplication will be several new additions of  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices, but still only a constant number of additions. As before, the constant number of matrix additions will be subsumed by  $\Theta$ -notation when we set up the recurrence equation to characterize the running time.

Strassen's method is not at all obvious. (This might be the biggest understatement in this book.) It has four steps:

1. Divide the input matrices  $A$  and  $B$  and output matrix  $C$  into  $n/2 \times n/2$  submatrices, as in equation (4.9). This step takes  $\Theta(1)$  time by index calculation, just as in SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE.
2. Create 10 matrices  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_{10}$ , each of which is  $n/2 \times n/2$  and is the sum or difference of two matrices created in step 1. We can create all 10 matrices in  $\Theta(n^2)$  time.
3. Using the submatrices created in step 1 and the 10 matrices created in step 2, recursively compute seven matrix products  $P_1, P_2, \dots, P_7$ . Each matrix  $P_i$  is  $n/2 \times n/2$ .
4. Compute the desired submatrices  $C_{11}, C_{12}, C_{21}, C_{22}$  of the result matrix  $C$  by adding and subtracting various combinations of the  $P_i$  matrices. We can compute all four submatrices in  $\Theta(n^2)$  time.

We shall see the details of steps 2–4 in a moment, but we already have enough information to set up a recurrence for the running time of Strassen's method. Let us assume that once the matrix size  $n$  gets down to 1, we perform a simple scalar multiplication, just as in line 4 of SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY-RECURSIVE. When  $n > 1$ , steps 1, 2, and 4 take a total of  $\Theta(n^2)$  time, and step 3 requires us to perform seven multiplications of  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices. Hence, we obtain the following recurrence for the running time  $T(n)$  of Strassen's algorithm:

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1, \\ 7T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2) & \text{if } n > 1. \end{cases} \quad (4.18)$$

We have traded off one matrix multiplication for a constant number of matrix additions. Once we understand recurrences and their solutions, we shall see that this tradeoff actually leads to a lower asymptotic running time. By the master method in Section 4.5, recurrence (4.18) has the solution  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\lg 7})$ .

We now proceed to describe the details. In step 2, we create the following 10 matrices:

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_1 &= B_{12} - B_{22} , \\
 S_2 &= A_{11} + A_{12} , \\
 S_3 &= A_{21} + A_{22} , \\
 S_4 &= B_{21} - B_{11} , \\
 S_5 &= A_{11} + A_{22} , \\
 S_6 &= B_{11} + B_{22} , \\
 S_7 &= A_{12} - A_{22} , \\
 S_8 &= B_{21} + B_{22} , \\
 S_9 &= A_{11} - A_{21} , \\
 S_{10} &= B_{11} + B_{12} .
 \end{aligned}$$

Since we must add or subtract  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices 10 times, this step does indeed take  $\Theta(n^2)$  time.

In step 3, we recursively multiply  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices seven times to compute the following  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices, each of which is the sum or difference of products of  $A$  and  $B$  submatrices:

$$\begin{aligned}
 P_1 &= A_{11} \cdot S_1 = A_{11} \cdot B_{12} - A_{11} \cdot B_{22} , \\
 P_2 &= S_2 \cdot B_{22} = A_{11} \cdot B_{22} + A_{12} \cdot B_{22} , \\
 P_3 &= S_3 \cdot B_{11} = A_{21} \cdot B_{11} + A_{22} \cdot B_{11} , \\
 P_4 &= A_{22} \cdot S_4 = A_{22} \cdot B_{21} - A_{22} \cdot B_{11} , \\
 P_5 &= S_5 \cdot S_6 = A_{11} \cdot B_{11} + A_{11} \cdot B_{22} + A_{22} \cdot B_{11} + A_{22} \cdot B_{22} , \\
 P_6 &= S_7 \cdot S_8 = A_{12} \cdot B_{21} + A_{12} \cdot B_{22} - A_{22} \cdot B_{21} - A_{22} \cdot B_{22} , \\
 P_7 &= S_9 \cdot S_{10} = A_{11} \cdot B_{11} + A_{11} \cdot B_{12} - A_{21} \cdot B_{11} - A_{21} \cdot B_{12} .
 \end{aligned}$$

Note that the only multiplications we need to perform are those in the middle column of the above equations. The right-hand column just shows what these products equal in terms of the original submatrices created in step 1.

Step 4 adds and subtracts the  $P_i$  matrices created in step 3 to construct the four  $n/2 \times n/2$  submatrices of the product  $C$ . We start with

$$C_{11} = P_5 + P_4 - P_2 + P_6 .$$

Expanding out the right-hand side, with the expansion of each  $P_i$  on its own line and vertically aligning terms that cancel out, we see that  $C_{11}$  equals

$$\begin{array}{r}
 A_{11} \cdot B_{11} + A_{11} \cdot B_{22} + A_{22} \cdot B_{11} + A_{22} \cdot B_{22} \\
 \quad \quad \quad - A_{22} \cdot B_{11} \quad \quad \quad + A_{22} \cdot B_{21} \\
 \quad \quad \quad - A_{11} \cdot B_{22} \quad \quad \quad - A_{12} \cdot B_{22} \\
 \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad - A_{22} \cdot B_{22} - A_{22} \cdot B_{21} + A_{12} \cdot B_{22} + A_{12} \cdot B_{21} \\
 \hline
 A_{11} \cdot B_{11} \quad \quad \quad + A_{12} \cdot B_{21} ,
 \end{array}$$

which corresponds to equation (4.11).

Similarly, we set

$$C_{12} = P_1 + P_2 ,$$

and so  $C_{12}$  equals

$$\begin{array}{r}
 A_{11} \cdot B_{12} - A_{11} \cdot B_{22} \\
 \quad \quad \quad + A_{11} \cdot B_{22} + A_{12} \cdot B_{22} \\
 \hline
 A_{11} \cdot B_{12} \quad \quad \quad + A_{12} \cdot B_{22} ,
 \end{array}$$

corresponding to equation (4.12).

Setting

$$C_{21} = P_3 + P_4$$

makes  $C_{21}$  equal

$$\begin{array}{r}
 A_{21} \cdot B_{11} + A_{22} \cdot B_{11} \\
 \quad \quad \quad - A_{22} \cdot B_{11} + A_{22} \cdot B_{21} \\
 \hline
 A_{21} \cdot B_{11} \quad \quad \quad + A_{22} \cdot B_{21} ,
 \end{array}$$

corresponding to equation (4.13).

Finally, we set

$$C_{22} = P_5 + P_1 - P_3 - P_7 ,$$

so that  $C_{22}$  equals

$$\begin{array}{r}
 A_{11} \cdot B_{11} + A_{11} \cdot B_{22} + A_{22} \cdot B_{11} + A_{22} \cdot B_{22} \\
 \quad \quad \quad - A_{11} \cdot B_{22} \quad \quad \quad + A_{11} \cdot B_{12} \\
 \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad - A_{22} \cdot B_{11} \quad \quad \quad - A_{21} \cdot B_{11} \\
 - A_{11} \cdot B_{11} \quad \quad \quad - A_{11} \cdot B_{12} + A_{21} \cdot B_{11} + A_{21} \cdot B_{12} \\
 \hline
 A_{22} \cdot B_{22} \quad \quad \quad + A_{21} \cdot B_{12} ,
 \end{array}$$



which corresponds to equation (4.14). Altogether, we add or subtract  $n/2 \times n/2$  matrices eight times in step 4, and so this step indeed takes  $\Theta(n^2)$  time.

Thus, we see that Strassen's algorithm, comprising steps 1–4, produces the correct matrix product and that recurrence (4.18) characterizes its running time. Since we shall see in Section 4.5 that this recurrence has the solution  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\lg 7})$ , Strassen's method is asymptotically faster than the straightforward SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY procedure. The notes at the end of this chapter discuss some of the practical aspects of Strassen's algorithm.

### Exercises

*Note:* Although Exercises 4.2-3, 4.2-4, and 4.2-5 are about variants on Strassen's algorithm, you should read Section 4.5 before trying to solve them.

#### 4.2-1

Use Strassen's algorithm to compute the matrix product

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 7 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 8 \\ 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Show your work.

#### 4.2-2

Write pseudocode for Strassen's algorithm.

#### 4.2-3

How would you modify Strassen's algorithm to multiply  $n \times n$  matrices in which  $n$  is not an exact power of 2? Show that the resulting algorithm runs in time  $\Theta(n^{\lg 7})$ .

#### 4.2-4

What is the largest  $k$  such that if you can multiply  $3 \times 3$  matrices using  $k$  multiplications (not assuming commutativity of multiplication), then you can multiply  $n \times n$  matrices in time  $o(n^{\lg 7})$ ? What would the running time of this algorithm be?

#### 4.2-5

V. Pan has discovered a way of multiplying  $68 \times 68$  matrices using 132,464 multiplications, a way of multiplying  $70 \times 70$  matrices using 143,640 multiplications, and a way of multiplying  $72 \times 72$  matrices using 155,424 multiplications. Which method yields the best asymptotic running time when used in a divide-and-conquer matrix-multiplication algorithm? How does it compare to Strassen's algorithm?

**4.2-6**

How quickly can you multiply a  $kn \times n$  matrix by an  $n \times kn$  matrix, using Strassen's algorithm as a subroutine? Answer the same question with the order of the input matrices reversed.

**4.2-7**

Show how to multiply the complex numbers  $a + bi$  and  $c + di$  using only three multiplications of real numbers. The algorithm should take  $a, b, c$ , and  $d$  as input and produce the real component  $ac - bd$  and the imaginary component  $ad + bc$  separately.

---

## 4.3 The substitution method for solving recurrences

Now that we have seen how recurrences characterize the running times of divide-and-conquer algorithms, we will learn how to solve recurrences. We start in this section with the “substitution” method.

The **substitution method** for solving recurrences comprises two steps:

1. Guess the form of the solution.
2. Use mathematical induction to find the constants and show that the solution works.

We substitute the guessed solution for the function when applying the inductive hypothesis to smaller values; hence the name “substitution method.” This method is powerful, but we must be able to guess the form of the answer in order to apply it.

We can use the substitution method to establish either upper or lower bounds on a recurrence. As an example, let us determine an upper bound on the recurrence

$$T(n) = 2T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + n, \quad (4.19)$$

which is similar to recurrences (4.3) and (4.4). We guess that the solution is  $T(n) = O(n \lg n)$ . The substitution method requires us to prove that  $T(n) \leq cn \lg n$  for an appropriate choice of the constant  $c > 0$ . We start by assuming that this bound holds for all positive  $m < n$ , in particular for  $m = \lfloor n/2 \rfloor$ , yielding  $T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor) \leq c \lfloor n/2 \rfloor \lg(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor)$ . Substituting into the recurrence yields

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2(c \lfloor n/2 \rfloor \lg(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor)) + n \\ &\leq cn \lg(n/2) + n \\ &= cn \lg n - cn \lg 2 + n \\ &= cn \lg n - cn + n \\ &\leq cn \lg n, \end{aligned}$$

where the last step holds as long as  $c \geq 1$ .

Mathematical induction now requires us to show that our solution holds for the boundary conditions. Typically, we do so by showing that the boundary conditions are suitable as base cases for the inductive proof. For the recurrence (4.19), we must show that we can choose the constant  $c$  large enough so that the bound  $T(n) \leq cn \lg n$  works for the boundary conditions as well. This requirement can sometimes lead to problems. Let us assume, for the sake of argument, that  $T(1) = 1$  is the sole boundary condition of the recurrence. Then for  $n = 1$ , the bound  $T(n) \leq cn \lg n$  yields  $T(1) \leq c1 \lg 1 = 0$ , which is at odds with  $T(1) = 1$ . Consequently, the base case of our inductive proof fails to hold.

We can overcome this obstacle in proving an inductive hypothesis for a specific boundary condition with only a little more effort. In the recurrence (4.19), for example, we take advantage of asymptotic notation requiring us only to prove  $T(n) \leq cn \lg n$  for  $n \geq n_0$ , where  $n_0$  is a constant *that we get to choose*. We keep the troublesome boundary condition  $T(1) = 1$ , but remove it from consideration in the inductive proof. We do so by first observing that for  $n > 3$ , the recurrence does not depend directly on  $T(1)$ . Thus, we can replace  $T(1)$  by  $T(2)$  and  $T(3)$  as the base cases in the inductive proof, letting  $n_0 = 2$ . Note that we make a distinction between the base case of the recurrence ( $n = 1$ ) and the base cases of the inductive proof ( $n = 2$  and  $n = 3$ ). With  $T(1) = 1$ , we derive from the recurrence that  $T(2) = 4$  and  $T(3) = 5$ . Now we can complete the inductive proof that  $T(n) \leq cn \lg n$  for some constant  $c \geq 1$  by choosing  $c$  large enough so that  $T(2) \leq c2 \lg 2$  and  $T(3) \leq c3 \lg 3$ . As it turns out, any choice of  $c \geq 2$  suffices for the base cases of  $n = 2$  and  $n = 3$  to hold. For most of the recurrences we shall examine, it is straightforward to extend boundary conditions to make the inductive assumption work for small  $n$ , and we shall not always explicitly work out the details.

### Making a good guess

Unfortunately, there is no general way to guess the correct solutions to recurrences. Guessing a solution takes experience and, occasionally, creativity. Fortunately, though, you can use some heuristics to help you become a good guesser. You can also use recursion trees, which we shall see in Section 4.4, to generate good guesses.

If a recurrence is similar to one you have seen before, then guessing a similar solution is reasonable. As an example, consider the recurrence

$$T(n) = 2T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor + 17) + n,$$

which looks difficult because of the added “17” in the argument to  $T$  on the right-hand side. Intuitively, however, this additional term cannot substantially affect the

solution to the recurrence. When  $n$  is large, the difference between  $\lfloor n/2 \rfloor$  and  $\lfloor n/2 \rfloor + 17$  is not that large: both cut  $n$  nearly evenly in half. Consequently, we make the guess that  $T(n) = O(n \lg n)$ , which you can verify as correct by using the substitution method (see Exercise 4.3-6).

Another way to make a good guess is to prove loose upper and lower bounds on the recurrence and then reduce the range of uncertainty. For example, we might start with a lower bound of  $T(n) = \Omega(n)$  for the recurrence (4.19), since we have the term  $n$  in the recurrence, and we can prove an initial upper bound of  $T(n) = O(n^2)$ . Then, we can gradually lower the upper bound and raise the lower bound until we converge on the correct, asymptotically tight solution of  $T(n) = \Theta(n \lg n)$ .

### Subtleties

Sometimes you might correctly guess an asymptotic bound on the solution of a recurrence, but somehow the math fails to work out in the induction. The problem frequently turns out to be that the inductive assumption is not strong enough to prove the detailed bound. If you revise the guess by subtracting a lower-order term when you hit such a snag, the math often goes through.

Consider the recurrence

$$T(n) = T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + T(\lceil n/2 \rceil) + 1.$$

We guess that the solution is  $T(n) = O(n)$ , and we try to show that  $T(n) \leq cn$  for an appropriate choice of the constant  $c$ . Substituting our guess in the recurrence, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq c \lfloor n/2 \rfloor + c \lceil n/2 \rceil + 1 \\ &= cn + 1, \end{aligned}$$

which does not imply  $T(n) \leq cn$  for any choice of  $c$ . We might be tempted to try a larger guess, say  $T(n) = O(n^2)$ . Although we can make this larger guess work, our original guess of  $T(n) = O(n)$  is correct. In order to show that it is correct, however, we must make a stronger inductive hypothesis.

Intuitively, our guess is nearly right: we are off only by the constant 1, a lower-order term. Nevertheless, mathematical induction does not work unless we prove the exact form of the inductive hypothesis. We overcome our difficulty by *subtracting* a lower-order term from our previous guess. Our new guess is  $T(n) \leq cn - d$ , where  $d \geq 0$  is a constant. We now have

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq (c \lfloor n/2 \rfloor - d) + (c \lceil n/2 \rceil - d) + 1 \\ &= cn - 2d + 1 \\ &\leq cn - d, \end{aligned}$$

as long as  $d \geq 1$ . As before, we must choose the constant  $c$  large enough to handle the boundary conditions.

You might find the idea of subtracting a lower-order term counterintuitive. After all, if the math does not work out, we should increase our guess, right? Not necessarily! When proving an upper bound by induction, it may actually be more difficult to prove that a weaker upper bound holds, because in order to prove the weaker bound, we must use the same weaker bound inductively in the proof. In our current example, when the recurrence has more than one recursive term, we get to subtract out the lower-order term of the proposed bound once per recursive term. In the above example, we subtracted out the constant  $d$  twice, once for the  $T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor)$  term and once for the  $T(\lceil n/2 \rceil)$  term. We ended up with the inequality  $T(n) \leq cn - 2d + 1$ , and it was easy to find values of  $d$  to make  $cn - 2d + 1$  be less than or equal to  $cn - d$ .

### Avoiding pitfalls

It is easy to err in the use of asymptotic notation. For example, in the recurrence (4.19) we can falsely “prove”  $T(n) = O(n)$  by guessing  $T(n) \leq cn$  and then arguing

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2(c \lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + n \\ &\leq cn + n \\ &= O(n), \quad \Leftarrow \text{wrong!!} \end{aligned}$$

since  $c$  is a constant. The error is that we have not proved the *exact form* of the inductive hypothesis, that is, that  $T(n) \leq cn$ . We therefore will explicitly prove that  $T(n) \leq cn$  when we want to show that  $T(n) = O(n)$ .

### Changing variables

Sometimes, a little algebraic manipulation can make an unknown recurrence similar to one you have seen before. As an example, consider the recurrence

$$T(n) = 2T(\lfloor \sqrt{n} \rfloor) + \lg n,$$

which looks difficult. We can simplify this recurrence, though, with a change of variables. For convenience, we shall not worry about rounding off values, such as  $\sqrt{n}$ , to be integers. Renaming  $m = \lg n$  yields

$$T(2^m) = 2T(2^{m/2}) + m.$$

We can now rename  $S(m) = T(2^m)$  to produce the new recurrence

$$S(m) = 2S(m/2) + m,$$

which is very much like recurrence (4.19). Indeed, this new recurrence has the same solution:  $S(m) = O(m \lg m)$ . Changing back from  $S(m)$  to  $T(n)$ , we obtain

$$T(n) = T(2^m) = S(m) = O(m \lg m) = O(\lg n \lg \lg n).$$

### Exercises

#### 4.3-1

Show that the solution of  $T(n) = T(n-1) + n$  is  $O(n^2)$ .

#### 4.3-2

Show that the solution of  $T(n) = T(\lceil n/2 \rceil) + 1$  is  $O(\lg n)$ .

#### 4.3-3

We saw that the solution of  $T(n) = 2T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + n$  is  $O(n \lg n)$ . Show that the solution of this recurrence is also  $\Omega(n \lg n)$ . Conclude that the solution is  $\Theta(n \lg n)$ .

#### 4.3-4

Show that by making a different inductive hypothesis, we can overcome the difficulty with the boundary condition  $T(1) = 1$  for recurrence (4.19) without adjusting the boundary conditions for the inductive proof.

#### 4.3-5

Show that  $\Theta(n \lg n)$  is the solution to the “exact” recurrence (4.3) for merge sort.

#### 4.3-6

Show that the solution to  $T(n) = 2T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor + 17) + n$  is  $O(n \lg n)$ .

#### 4.3-7

Using the master method in Section 4.5, you can show that the solution to the recurrence  $T(n) = 4T(n/3) + n$  is  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_3 4})$ . Show that a substitution proof with the assumption  $T(n) \leq cn^{\log_3 4}$  fails. Then show how to subtract off a lower-order term to make a substitution proof work.

#### 4.3-8

Using the master method in Section 4.5, you can show that the solution to the recurrence  $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n$  is  $T(n) = \Theta(n^2)$ . Show that a substitution proof with the assumption  $T(n) \leq cn^2$  fails. Then show how to subtract off a lower-order term to make a substitution proof work.

**4.3-9**

Solve the recurrence  $T(n) = 3T(\sqrt{n}) + \log n$  by making a change of variables. Your solution should be asymptotically tight. Do not worry about whether values are integral.

---

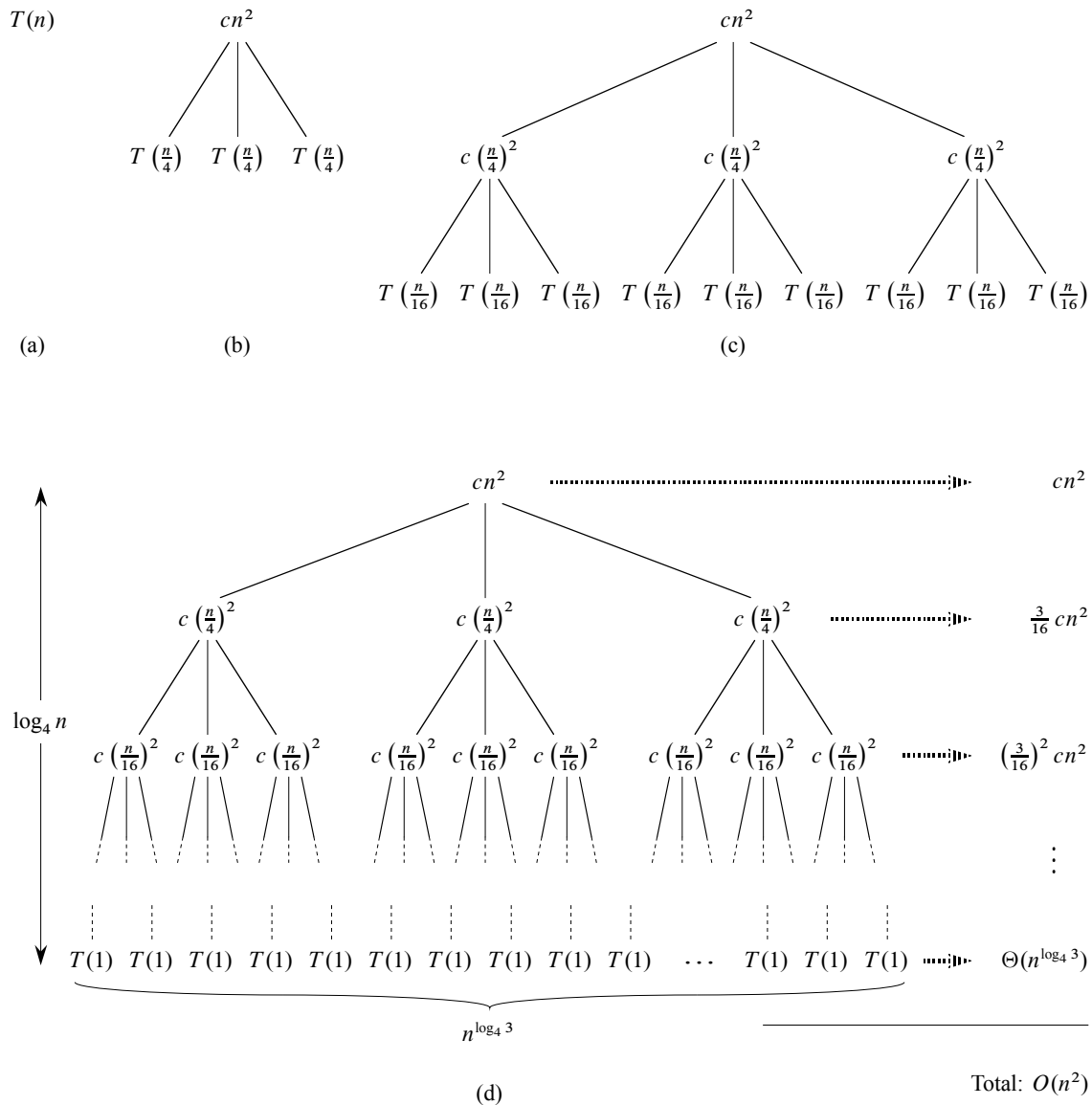
**4.4 The recursion-tree method for solving recurrences**

Although you can use the substitution method to provide a succinct proof that a solution to a recurrence is correct, you might have trouble coming up with a good guess. Drawing out a recursion tree, as we did in our analysis of the merge sort recurrence in Section 2.3.2, serves as a straightforward way to devise a good guess. In a *recursion tree*, each node represents the cost of a single subproblem somewhere in the set of recursive function invocations. We sum the costs within each level of the tree to obtain a set of per-level costs, and then we sum all the per-level costs to determine the total cost of all levels of the recursion.

A recursion tree is best used to generate a good guess, which you can then verify by the substitution method. When using a recursion tree to generate a good guess, you can often tolerate a small amount of “sloppiness,” since you will be verifying your guess later on. If you are very careful when drawing out a recursion tree and summing the costs, however, you can use a recursion tree as a direct proof of a solution to a recurrence. In this section, we will use recursion trees to generate good guesses, and in Section 4.6, we will use recursion trees directly to prove the theorem that forms the basis of the master method.

For example, let us see how a recursion tree would provide a good guess for the recurrence  $T(n) = 3T(\lfloor n/4 \rfloor) + \Theta(n^2)$ . We start by focusing on finding an upper bound for the solution. Because we know that floors and ceilings usually do not matter when solving recurrences (here’s an example of sloppiness that we can tolerate), we create a recursion tree for the recurrence  $T(n) = 3T(n/4) + cn^2$ , having written out the implied constant coefficient  $c > 0$ .

Figure 4.5 shows how we derive the recursion tree for  $T(n) = 3T(n/4) + cn^2$ . For convenience, we assume that  $n$  is an exact power of 4 (another example of tolerable sloppiness) so that all subproblem sizes are integers. Part (a) of the figure shows  $T(n)$ , which we expand in part (b) into an equivalent tree representing the recurrence. The  $cn^2$  term at the root represents the cost at the top level of recursion, and the three subtrees of the root represent the costs incurred by the subproblems of size  $n/4$ . Part (c) shows this process carried one step further by expanding each node with cost  $T(n/4)$  from part (b). The cost for each of the three children of the root is  $c(n/4)^2$ . We continue expanding each node in the tree by breaking it into its constituent parts as determined by the recurrence.



**Figure 4.5** Constructing a recursion tree for the recurrence  $T(n) = 3T(n/4) + cn^2$ . Part (a) shows  $T(n)$ , which progressively expands in (b)–(d) to form the recursion tree. The fully expanded tree in part (d) has height  $\log_4 n$  (it has  $\log_4 n + 1$  levels).



Because subproblem sizes decrease by a factor of 4 each time we go down one level, we eventually must reach a boundary condition. How far from the root do we reach one? The subproblem size for a node at depth  $i$  is  $n/4^i$ . Thus, the subproblem size hits  $n = 1$  when  $n/4^i = 1$  or, equivalently, when  $i = \log_4 n$ . Thus, the tree has  $\log_4 n + 1$  levels (at depths  $0, 1, 2, \dots, \log_4 n$ ).

Next we determine the cost at each level of the tree. Each level has three times more nodes than the level above, and so the number of nodes at depth  $i$  is  $3^i$ . Because subproblem sizes reduce by a factor of 4 for each level we go down from the root, each node at depth  $i$ , for  $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \log_4 n - 1$ , has a cost of  $c(n/4^i)^2$ . Multiplying, we see that the total cost over all nodes at depth  $i$ , for  $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \log_4 n - 1$ , is  $3^i c(n/4^i)^2 = (3/16)^i cn^2$ . The bottom level, at depth  $\log_4 n$ , has  $3^{\log_4 n} = n^{\log_4 3}$  nodes, each contributing cost  $T(1)$ , for a total cost of  $n^{\log_4 3} T(1)$ , which is  $\Theta(n^{\log_4 3})$ , since we assume that  $T(1)$  is a constant.

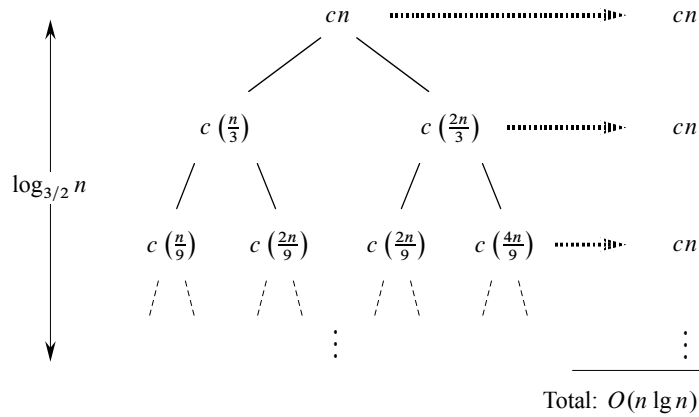
Now we add up the costs over all levels to determine the cost for the entire tree:

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= cn^2 + \frac{3}{16} cn^2 + \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^2 cn^2 + \dots + \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^{\log_4 n - 1} cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_4 n - 1} \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^i cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\ &= \frac{(3/16)^{\log_4 n} - 1}{(3/16) - 1} cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \quad (\text{by equation (A.5)}). \end{aligned}$$

This last formula looks somewhat messy until we realize that we can again take advantage of small amounts of sloppiness and use an infinite decreasing geometric series as an upper bound. Backing up one step and applying equation (A.6), we have

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_4 n - 1} \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^i cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\ &< \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^i cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - (3/16)} cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\ &= \frac{16}{13} cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\ &= O(n^2). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have derived a guess of  $T(n) = O(n^2)$  for our original recurrence  $T(n) = 3T(\lfloor n/4 \rfloor) + \Theta(n^2)$ . In this example, the coefficients of  $cn^2$  form a decreasing geometric series and, by equation (A.6), the sum of these coefficients



**Figure 4.6** A recursion tree for the recurrence  $T(n) = T(n/3) + T(2n/3) + cn$ .

is bounded from above by the constant  $16/13$ . Since the root's contribution to the total cost is  $cn^2$ , the root contributes a constant fraction of the total cost. In other words, the cost of the root dominates the total cost of the tree.

In fact, if  $O(n^2)$  is indeed an upper bound for the recurrence (as we shall verify in a moment), then it must be a tight bound. Why? The first recursive call contributes a cost of  $\Theta(n^2)$ , and so  $\Omega(n^2)$  must be a lower bound for the recurrence.

Now we can use the substitution method to verify that our guess was correct, that is,  $T(n) = O(n^2)$  is an upper bound for the recurrence  $T(n) = 3T(\lfloor n/4 \rfloor) + \Theta(n^2)$ . We want to show that  $T(n) \leq dn^2$  for some constant  $d > 0$ . Using the same constant  $c > 0$  as before, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &\leq 3T(\lfloor n/4 \rfloor) + cn^2 \\
 &\leq 3d \lfloor n/4 \rfloor^2 + cn^2 \\
 &\leq 3d(n/4)^2 + cn^2 \\
 &= \frac{3}{16} dn^2 + cn^2 \\
 &\leq dn^2,
 \end{aligned}$$

where the last step holds as long as  $d \geq (16/13)c$ .

In another, more intricate, example, Figure 4.6 shows the recursion tree for

$$T(n) = T(n/3) + T(2n/3) + O(n).$$

(Again, we omit floor and ceiling functions for simplicity.) As before, we let  $c$  represent the constant factor in the  $O(n)$  term. When we add the values across the levels of the recursion tree shown in the figure, we get a value of  $cn$  for every level.

The longest simple path from the root to a leaf is  $n \rightarrow (2/3)n \rightarrow (2/3)^2 n \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow 1$ . Since  $(2/3)^k n = 1$  when  $k = \log_{3/2} n$ , the height of the tree is  $\log_{3/2} n$ .

Intuitively, we expect the solution to the recurrence to be at most the number of levels times the cost of each level, or  $O(cn \log_{3/2} n) = O(n \lg n)$ . Figure 4.6 shows only the top levels of the recursion tree, however, and not every level in the tree contributes a cost of  $cn$ . Consider the cost of the leaves. If this recursion tree were a complete binary tree of height  $\log_{3/2} n$ , there would be  $2^{\log_{3/2} n} = n^{\log_{3/2} 2}$  leaves. Since the cost of each leaf is a constant, the total cost of all leaves would then be  $\Theta(n^{\log_{3/2} 2})$  which, since  $\log_{3/2} 2$  is a constant strictly greater than 1, is  $\omega(n \lg n)$ . This recursion tree is not a complete binary tree, however, and so it has fewer than  $n^{\log_{3/2} 2}$  leaves. Moreover, as we go down from the root, more and more internal nodes are absent. Consequently, levels toward the bottom of the recursion tree contribute less than  $cn$  to the total cost. We could work out an accurate accounting of all costs, but remember that we are just trying to come up with a guess to use in the substitution method. Let us tolerate the sloppiness and attempt to show that a guess of  $O(n \lg n)$  for the upper bound is correct.

Indeed, we can use the substitution method to verify that  $O(n \lg n)$  is an upper bound for the solution to the recurrence. We show that  $T(n) \leq dn \lg n$ , where  $d$  is a suitable positive constant. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &\leq T(n/3) + T(2n/3) + cn \\
 &\leq d(n/3) \lg(n/3) + d(2n/3) \lg(2n/3) + cn \\
 &= (d(n/3) \lg n - d(n/3) \lg 3) \\
 &\quad + (d(2n/3) \lg n - d(2n/3) \lg(3/2)) + cn \\
 &= dn \lg n - d((n/3) \lg 3 + (2n/3) \lg(3/2)) + cn \\
 &= dn \lg n - d((n/3) \lg 3 + (2n/3) \lg 3 - (2n/3) \lg 2) + cn \\
 &= dn \lg n - dn(\lg 3 - 2/3) + cn \\
 &\leq dn \lg n,
 \end{aligned}$$

as long as  $d \geq c/(\lg 3 - (2/3))$ . Thus, we did not need to perform a more accurate accounting of costs in the recursion tree.

## Exercises

### 4.4-1

Use a recursion tree to determine a good asymptotic upper bound on the recurrence  $T(n) = 3T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + n$ . Use the substitution method to verify your answer.

### 4.4-2

Use a recursion tree to determine a good asymptotic upper bound on the recurrence  $T(n) = T(n/2) + n^2$ . Use the substitution method to verify your answer.

**4.4-3**

Use a recursion tree to determine a good asymptotic upper bound on the recurrence  $T(n) = 4T(n/2 + 2) + n$ . Use the substitution method to verify your answer.

**4.4-4**

Use a recursion tree to determine a good asymptotic upper bound on the recurrence  $T(n) = 2T(n - 1) + 1$ . Use the substitution method to verify your answer.

**4.4-5**

Use a recursion tree to determine a good asymptotic upper bound on the recurrence  $T(n) = T(n - 1) + T(n/2) + n$ . Use the substitution method to verify your answer.

**4.4-6**

Argue that the solution to the recurrence  $T(n) = T(n/3) + T(2n/3) + cn$ , where  $c$  is a constant, is  $\Omega(n \lg n)$  by appealing to a recursion tree.

**4.4-7**

Draw the recursion tree for  $T(n) = 4T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + cn$ , where  $c$  is a constant, and provide a tight asymptotic bound on its solution. Verify your bound by the substitution method.

**4.4-8**

Use a recursion tree to give an asymptotically tight solution to the recurrence  $T(n) = T(n - a) + T(a) + cn$ , where  $a \geq 1$  and  $c > 0$  are constants.

**4.4-9**

Use a recursion tree to give an asymptotically tight solution to the recurrence  $T(n) = T(\alpha n) + T((1 - \alpha)n) + cn$ , where  $\alpha$  is a constant in the range  $0 < \alpha < 1$  and  $c > 0$  is also a constant.

---

## 4.5 The master method for solving recurrences

The master method provides a “cookbook” method for solving recurrences of the form

$$T(n) = aT(n/b) + f(n), \quad (4.20)$$

where  $a \geq 1$  and  $b > 1$  are constants and  $f(n)$  is an asymptotically positive function. To use the master method, you will need to memorize three cases, but then you will be able to solve many recurrences quite easily, often without pencil and paper.

The recurrence (4.20) describes the running time of an algorithm that divides a problem of size  $n$  into  $a$  subproblems, each of size  $n/b$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are positive constants. The  $a$  subproblems are solved recursively, each in time  $T(n/b)$ . The function  $f(n)$  encompasses the cost of dividing the problem and combining the results of the subproblems. For example, the recurrence arising from Strassen's algorithm has  $a = 7$ ,  $b = 2$ , and  $f(n) = \Theta(n^2)$ .

As a matter of technical correctness, the recurrence is not actually well defined, because  $n/b$  might not be an integer. Replacing each of the  $a$  terms  $T(n/b)$  with either  $T(\lfloor n/b \rfloor)$  or  $T(\lceil n/b \rceil)$  will not affect the asymptotic behavior of the recurrence, however. (We will prove this assertion in the next section.) We normally find it convenient, therefore, to omit the floor and ceiling functions when writing divide-and-conquer recurrences of this form.

### The master theorem

The master method depends on the following theorem.

#### **Theorem 4.1 (Master theorem)**

Let  $a \geq 1$  and  $b > 1$  be constants, let  $f(n)$  be a function, and let  $T(n)$  be defined on the nonnegative integers by the recurrence

$$T(n) = aT(n/b) + f(n),$$

where we interpret  $n/b$  to mean either  $\lfloor n/b \rfloor$  or  $\lceil n/b \rceil$ . Then  $T(n)$  has the following asymptotic bounds:

1. If  $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$  for some constant  $\epsilon > 0$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ .
2. If  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg n)$ .
3. If  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$  for some constant  $\epsilon > 0$ , and if  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$  for some constant  $c < 1$  and all sufficiently large  $n$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$ . ■

Before applying the master theorem to some examples, let's spend a moment trying to understand what it says. In each of the three cases, we compare the function  $f(n)$  with the function  $n^{\log_b a}$ . Intuitively, the larger of the two functions determines the solution to the recurrence. If, as in case 1, the function  $n^{\log_b a}$  is the larger, then the solution is  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ . If, as in case 3, the function  $f(n)$  is the larger, then the solution is  $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$ . If, as in case 2, the two functions are the same size, we multiply by a logarithmic factor, and the solution is  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg n) = \Theta(f(n) \lg n)$ .

Beyond this intuition, you need to be aware of some technicalities. In the first case, not only must  $f(n)$  be smaller than  $n^{\log_b a}$ , it must be *polynomially* smaller.

That is,  $f(n)$  must be asymptotically smaller than  $n^{\log_b a}$  by a factor of  $n^\epsilon$  for some constant  $\epsilon > 0$ . In the third case, not only must  $f(n)$  be larger than  $n^{\log_b a}$ , it also must be polynomially larger and in addition satisfy the “regularity” condition that  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ . This condition is satisfied by most of the polynomially bounded functions that we shall encounter.

Note that the three cases do not cover all the possibilities for  $f(n)$ . There is a gap between cases 1 and 2 when  $f(n)$  is smaller than  $n^{\log_b a}$  but not polynomially smaller. Similarly, there is a gap between cases 2 and 3 when  $f(n)$  is larger than  $n^{\log_b a}$  but not polynomially larger. If the function  $f(n)$  falls into one of these gaps, or if the regularity condition in case 3 fails to hold, you cannot use the master method to solve the recurrence.

### Using the master method

To use the master method, we simply determine which case (if any) of the master theorem applies and write down the answer.

As a first example, consider

$$T(n) = 9T(n/3) + n.$$

For this recurrence, we have  $a = 9$ ,  $b = 3$ ,  $f(n) = n$ , and thus we have that  $n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_3 9} = \Theta(n^2)$ . Since  $f(n) = O(n^{\log_3 9 - \epsilon})$ , where  $\epsilon = 1$ , we can apply case 1 of the master theorem and conclude that the solution is  $T(n) = \Theta(n^2)$ .

Now consider

$$T(n) = T(2n/3) + 1,$$

in which  $a = 1$ ,  $b = 3/2$ ,  $f(n) = 1$ , and  $n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_{3/2} 1} = n^0 = 1$ . Case 2 applies, since  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a}) = \Theta(1)$ , and thus the solution to the recurrence is  $T(n) = \Theta(\lg n)$ .

For the recurrence

$$T(n) = 3T(n/4) + n \lg n,$$

we have  $a = 3$ ,  $b = 4$ ,  $f(n) = n \lg n$ , and  $n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_4 3} = O(n^{0.793})$ . Since  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_4 3 + \epsilon})$ , where  $\epsilon \approx 0.2$ , case 3 applies if we can show that the regularity condition holds for  $f(n)$ . For sufficiently large  $n$ , we have that  $af(n/b) = 3(n/4) \lg(n/4) \leq (3/4)n \lg n = cf(n)$  for  $c = 3/4$ . Consequently, by case 3, the solution to the recurrence is  $T(n) = \Theta(n \lg n)$ .

The master method does not apply to the recurrence

$$T(n) = 2T(n/2) + n \lg n,$$

even though it appears to have the proper form:  $a = 2$ ,  $b = 2$ ,  $f(n) = n \lg n$ , and  $n^{\log_b a} = n$ . You might mistakenly think that case 3 should apply, since

$f(n) = n \lg n$  is asymptotically larger than  $n^{\log_b a} = n$ . The problem is that it is not *polynomially* larger. The ratio  $f(n)/n^{\log_b a} = (n \lg n)/n = \lg n$  is asymptotically less than  $n^\epsilon$  for any positive constant  $\epsilon$ . Consequently, the recurrence falls into the gap between case 2 and case 3. (See Exercise 4.6-2 for a solution.)

Let's use the master method to solve the recurrences we saw in Sections 4.1 and 4.2. Recurrence (4.7),

$$T(n) = 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n) ,$$

characterizes the running times of the divide-and-conquer algorithm for both the maximum-subarray problem and merge sort. (As is our practice, we omit stating the base case in the recurrence.) Here, we have  $a = 2$ ,  $b = 2$ ,  $f(n) = \Theta(n)$ , and thus we have that  $n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 2} = n$ . Case 2 applies, since  $f(n) = \Theta(n)$ , and so we have the solution  $T(n) = \Theta(n \lg n)$ .

Recurrence (4.17),

$$T(n) = 8T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2) ,$$

describes the running time of the first divide-and-conquer algorithm that we saw for matrix multiplication. Now we have  $a = 8$ ,  $b = 2$ , and  $f(n) = \Theta(n^2)$ , and so  $n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 8} = n^3$ . Since  $n^3$  is polynomially larger than  $f(n)$  (that is,  $f(n) = O(n^{3-\epsilon})$  for  $\epsilon = 1$ ), case 1 applies, and  $T(n) = \Theta(n^3)$ .

Finally, consider recurrence (4.18),

$$T(n) = 7T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2) ,$$

which describes the running time of Strassen's algorithm. Here, we have  $a = 7$ ,  $b = 2$ ,  $f(n) = \Theta(n^2)$ , and thus  $n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 7}$ . Rewriting  $\log_2 7$  as  $\lg 7$  and recalling that  $2.80 < \lg 7 < 2.81$ , we see that  $f(n) = O(n^{\lg 7 - \epsilon})$  for  $\epsilon = 0.8$ . Again, case 1 applies, and we have the solution  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\lg 7})$ .

## Exercises

### 4.5-1

Use the master method to give tight asymptotic bounds for the following recurrences.

- a.  $T(n) = 2T(n/4) + 1$ .
- b.  $T(n) = 2T(n/4) + \sqrt{n}$ .
- c.  $T(n) = 2T(n/4) + n$ .
- d.  $T(n) = 2T(n/4) + n^2$ .

**4.5-2**

Professor Caesar wishes to develop a matrix-multiplication algorithm that is asymptotically faster than Strassen's algorithm. His algorithm will use the divide-and-conquer method, dividing each matrix into pieces of size  $n/4 \times n/4$ , and the divide and combine steps together will take  $\Theta(n^2)$  time. He needs to determine how many subproblems his algorithm has to create in order to beat Strassen's algorithm. If his algorithm creates  $a$  subproblems, then the recurrence for the running time  $T(n)$  becomes  $T(n) = aT(n/4) + \Theta(n^2)$ . What is the largest integer value of  $a$  for which Professor Caesar's algorithm would be asymptotically faster than Strassen's algorithm?

**4.5-3**

Use the master method to show that the solution to the binary-search recurrence  $T(n) = T(n/2) + \Theta(1)$  is  $T(n) = \Theta(\lg n)$ . (See Exercise 2.3-5 for a description of binary search.)

**4.5-4**

Can the master method be applied to the recurrence  $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n^2 \lg n$ ? Why or why not? Give an asymptotic upper bound for this recurrence.

**4.5-5 ★**

Consider the regularity condition  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$  for some constant  $c < 1$ , which is part of case 3 of the master theorem. Give an example of constants  $a \geq 1$  and  $b > 1$  and a function  $f(n)$  that satisfies all the conditions in case 3 of the master theorem except the regularity condition.

**★ 4.6 Proof of the master theorem**

This section contains a proof of the master theorem (Theorem 4.1). You do not need to understand the proof in order to apply the master theorem.

The proof appears in two parts. The first part analyzes the master recurrence (4.20), under the simplifying assumption that  $T(n)$  is defined only on exact powers of  $b > 1$ , that is, for  $n = 1, b, b^2, \dots$ . This part gives all the intuition needed to understand why the master theorem is true. The second part shows how to extend the analysis to all positive integers  $n$ ; it applies mathematical technique to the problem of handling floors and ceilings.

In this section, we shall sometimes abuse our asymptotic notation slightly by using it to describe the behavior of functions that are defined only over exact powers of  $b$ . Recall that the definitions of asymptotic notations require that



bounds be proved for all sufficiently large numbers, not just those that are powers of  $b$ . Since we could make new asymptotic notations that apply only to the set  $\{b^i : i = 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ , instead of to the nonnegative numbers, this abuse is minor.

Nevertheless, we must always be on guard when we use asymptotic notation over a limited domain lest we draw improper conclusions. For example, proving that  $T(n) = O(n)$  when  $n$  is an exact power of 2 does not guarantee that  $T(n) = O(n)$ . The function  $T(n)$  could be defined as

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n = 1, 2, 4, 8, \dots, \\ n^2 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

in which case the best upper bound that applies to all values of  $n$  is  $T(n) = O(n^2)$ . Because of this sort of drastic consequence, we shall never use asymptotic notation over a limited domain without making it absolutely clear from the context that we are doing so.

#### 4.6.1 The proof for exact powers

The first part of the proof of the master theorem analyzes the recurrence (4.20)

$$T(n) = aT(n/b) + f(n),$$

for the master method, under the assumption that  $n$  is an exact power of  $b > 1$ , where  $b$  need not be an integer. We break the analysis into three lemmas. The first reduces the problem of solving the master recurrence to the problem of evaluating an expression that contains a summation. The second determines bounds on this summation. The third lemma puts the first two together to prove a version of the master theorem for the case in which  $n$  is an exact power of  $b$ .

##### **Lemma 4.2**

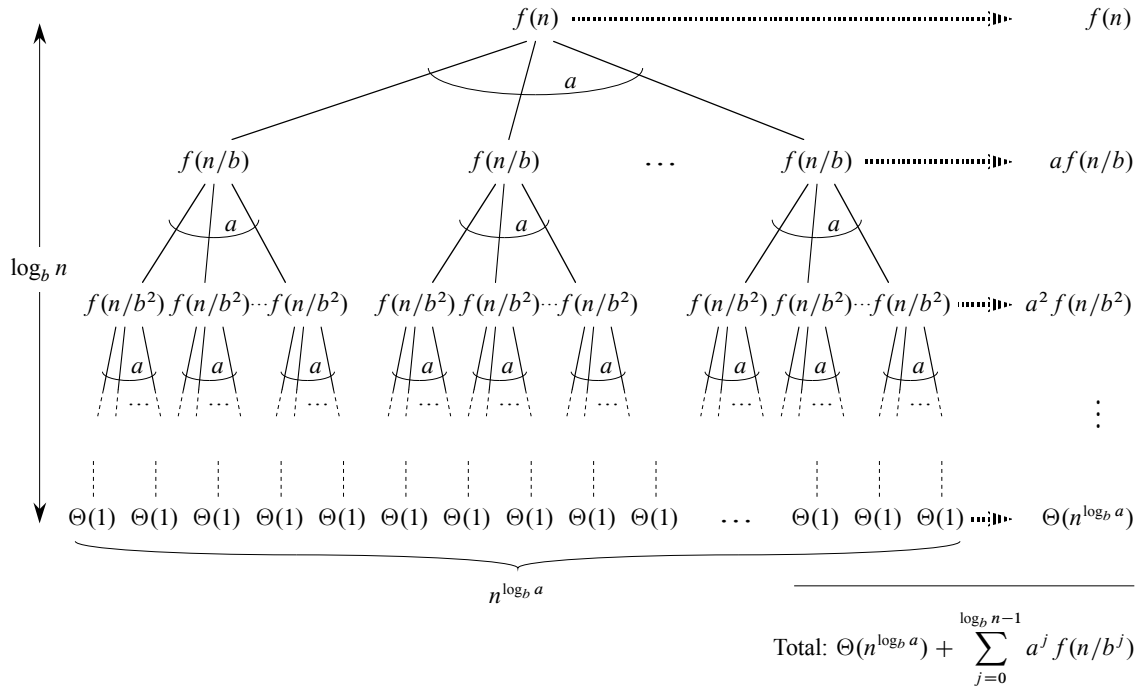
Let  $a \geq 1$  and  $b > 1$  be constants, and let  $f(n)$  be a nonnegative function defined on exact powers of  $b$ . Define  $T(n)$  on exact powers of  $b$  by the recurrence

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1, \\ aT(n/b) + f(n) & \text{if } n = b^i, \end{cases}$$

where  $i$  is a positive integer. Then

$$T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a}) + \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^j f(n/b^j). \quad (4.21)$$

**Proof** We use the recursion tree in Figure 4.7. The root of the tree has cost  $f(n)$ , and it has  $a$  children, each with cost  $f(n/b)$ . (It is convenient to think of  $a$  as being



**Figure 4.7** The recursion tree generated by  $T(n) = aT(n/b) + f(n)$ . The tree is a complete  $a$ -ary tree with  $n^{\log_b a}$  leaves and height  $\log_b n$ . The cost of the nodes at each depth is shown at the right, and their sum is given in equation (4.21).

an integer, especially when visualizing the recursion tree, but the mathematics does not require it.) Each of these children has  $a$  children, making  $a^2$  nodes at depth 2, and each of the  $a$  children has cost  $f(n/b^2)$ . In general, there are  $a^j$  nodes at depth  $j$ , and each has cost  $f(n/b^j)$ . The cost of each leaf is  $T(1) = \Theta(1)$ , and each leaf is at depth  $\log_b n$ , since  $n/b^{\log_b n} = 1$ . There are  $a^{\log_b n} = n^{\log_b a}$  leaves in the tree.

We can obtain equation (4.21) by summing the costs of the nodes at each depth in the tree, as shown in the figure. The cost for all internal nodes at depth  $j$  is  $a^j f(n/b^j)$ , and so the total cost of all internal nodes is

$$\sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^j f(n/b^j).$$

In the underlying divide-and-conquer algorithm, this sum represents the costs of dividing problems into subproblems and then recombining the subproblems. The

cost of all the leaves, which is the cost of doing all  $n^{\log_b a}$  subproblems of size 1, is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ . ■

In terms of the recursion tree, the three cases of the master theorem correspond to cases in which the total cost of the tree is (1) dominated by the costs in the leaves, (2) evenly distributed among the levels of the tree, or (3) dominated by the cost of the root.

The summation in equation (4.21) describes the cost of the dividing and combining steps in the underlying divide-and-conquer algorithm. The next lemma provides asymptotic bounds on the summation's growth.

**Lemma 4.3**

Let  $a \geq 1$  and  $b > 1$  be constants, and let  $f(n)$  be a nonnegative function defined on exact powers of  $b$ . A function  $g(n)$  defined over exact powers of  $b$  by

$$g(n) = \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^j f(n/b^j) \quad (4.22)$$

has the following asymptotic bounds for exact powers of  $b$ :

1. If  $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$  for some constant  $\epsilon > 0$ , then  $g(n) = O(n^{\log_b a})$ .
2. If  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ , then  $g(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg n)$ .
3. If  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$  for some constant  $c < 1$  and for all sufficiently large  $n$ , then  $g(n) = \Theta(f(n))$ .

**Proof** For case 1, we have  $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$ , which implies that  $f(n/b^j) = O((n/b^j)^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$ . Substituting into equation (4.22) yields

$$g(n) = O\left(\sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^j \left(\frac{n}{b^j}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon}\right). \quad (4.23)$$

We bound the summation within the  $O$ -notation by factoring out terms and simplifying, which leaves an increasing geometric series:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^j \left(\frac{n}{b^j}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} &= n^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} \left(\frac{ab^\epsilon}{b^{\log_b a}}\right)^j \\ &= n^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} (b^\epsilon)^j \\ &= n^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \left(\frac{b^{\epsilon \log_b n} - 1}{b^\epsilon - 1}\right) \end{aligned}$$

$$= n^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \left( \frac{n^\epsilon - 1}{b^\epsilon - 1} \right).$$

Since  $b$  and  $\epsilon$  are constants, we can rewrite the last expression as  $n^{\log_b a - \epsilon} O(n^\epsilon) = O(n^{\log_b a})$ . Substituting this expression for the summation in equation (4.23) yields

$$g(n) = O(n^{\log_b a}),$$

thereby proving case 1.

Because case 2 assumes that  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ , we have that  $f(n/b^j) = \Theta((n/b^j)^{\log_b a})$ . Substituting into equation (4.22) yields

$$g(n) = \Theta \left( \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^j \left( \frac{n}{b^j} \right)^{\log_b a} \right). \quad (4.24)$$

We bound the summation within the  $\Theta$ -notation as in case 1, but this time we do not obtain a geometric series. Instead, we discover that every term of the summation is the same:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^j \left( \frac{n}{b^j} \right)^{\log_b a} &= n^{\log_b a} \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} \left( \frac{a}{b^{\log_b a}} \right)^j \\ &= n^{\log_b a} \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \\ &= n^{\log_b a} \log_b n. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this expression for the summation in equation (4.24) yields

$$\begin{aligned} g(n) &= \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log_b n) \\ &= \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg n), \end{aligned}$$

proving case 2.

We prove case 3 similarly. Since  $f(n)$  appears in the definition (4.22) of  $g(n)$  and all terms of  $g(n)$  are nonnegative, we can conclude that  $g(n) = \Omega(f(n))$  for exact powers of  $b$ . We assume in the statement of the lemma that  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$  for some constant  $c < 1$  and all sufficiently large  $n$ . We rewrite this assumption as  $f(n/b) \leq (c/a)f(n)$  and iterate  $j$  times, yielding  $f(n/b^j) \leq (c/a)^j f(n)$  or, equivalently,  $a^j f(n/b^j) \leq c^j f(n)$ , where we assume that the values we iterate on are sufficiently large. This inequality holds for all but at most a constant number of terms with the smallest such values  $n/b^j$ , for which  $a^j f(n/b^j) = O(1)$ .

Substituting into equation (4.22) and simplifying yields a geometric series, but unlike the series in case 1, this one has decreasing terms. We use an  $O(1)$  term to

capture the terms that are not covered by our assumption that  $n$  is sufficiently large:

$$\begin{aligned}
 g(n) &= \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^j f(n/b^j) \\
 &\leq \sum_{j=0}^{\log_b n - 1} c^j f(n) + O(1) \\
 &\leq f(n) \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} c^j + O(1) \\
 &= f(n) \left( \frac{1}{1-c} \right) + O(1) \\
 &= O(f(n)) ,
 \end{aligned}$$

since  $c$  is a constant. Thus, we can conclude that  $g(n) = \Theta(f(n))$  for exact powers of  $b$ . With case 3 proved, the proof of the lemma is complete. ■

We can now prove a version of the master theorem for the case in which  $n$  is an exact power of  $b$ .

**Lemma 4.4**

Let  $a \geq 1$  and  $b > 1$  be constants, and let  $f(n)$  be a nonnegative function defined on exact powers of  $b$ . Define  $T(n)$  on exact powers of  $b$  by the recurrence

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1 , \\ aT(n/b) + f(n) & \text{if } n = b^i , \end{cases}$$

where  $i$  is a positive integer. Then  $T(n)$  has the following asymptotic bounds for exact powers of  $b$ :

1. If  $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$  for some constant  $\epsilon > 0$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ .
2. If  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg n)$ .
3. If  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$  for some constant  $\epsilon > 0$ , and if  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$  for some constant  $c < 1$  and all sufficiently large  $n$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$ .

**Proof** We use the bounds in Lemma 4.3 to evaluate the summation (4.21) from Lemma 4.2. For case 1, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &= \Theta(n^{\log_b a}) + O(n^{\log_b a}) \\
 &= \Theta(n^{\log_b a}) ,
 \end{aligned}$$

and for case 2,

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= \Theta(n^{\log_b a}) + \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg n) \\ &= \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg n) . \end{aligned}$$

For case 3,

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= \Theta(n^{\log_b a}) + \Theta(f(n)) \\ &= \Theta(f(n)) , \end{aligned}$$

because  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$ . ■

### 4.6.2 Floors and ceilings

To complete the proof of the master theorem, we must now extend our analysis to the situation in which floors and ceilings appear in the master recurrence, so that the recurrence is defined for all integers, not for just exact powers of  $b$ . Obtaining a lower bound on

$$T(n) = aT(\lceil n/b \rceil) + f(n) \tag{4.25}$$

and an upper bound on

$$T(n) = aT(\lfloor n/b \rfloor) + f(n) \tag{4.26}$$

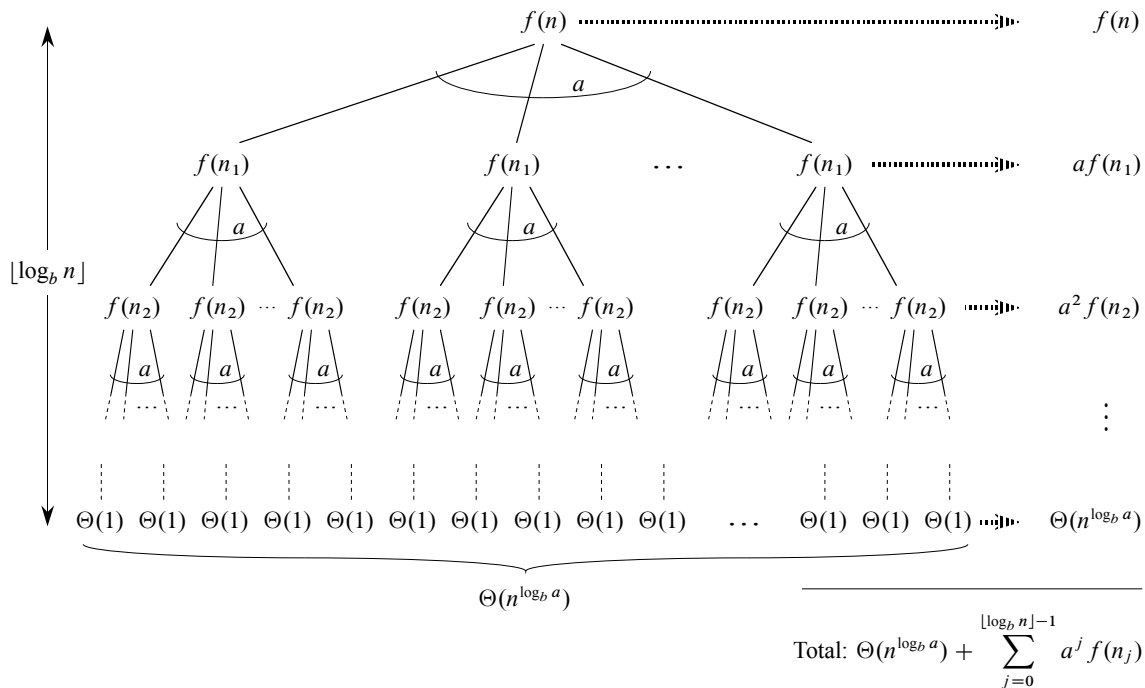
is routine, since we can push through the bound  $\lceil n/b \rceil \geq n/b$  in the first case to yield the desired result, and we can push through the bound  $\lfloor n/b \rfloor \leq n/b$  in the second case. We use much the same technique to lower-bound the recurrence (4.26) as to upper-bound the recurrence (4.25), and so we shall present only this latter bound.

We modify the recursion tree of Figure 4.7 to produce the recursion tree in Figure 4.8. As we go down in the recursion tree, we obtain a sequence of recursive invocations on the arguments

$$\begin{aligned} n , \\ \lceil n/b \rceil , \\ \lceil \lceil n/b \rceil / b \rceil , \\ \lceil \lceil \lceil n/b \rceil / b \rceil / b \rceil , \\ \vdots \end{aligned}$$

Let us denote the  $j$ th element in the sequence by  $n_j$ , where

$$n_j = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } j = 0 , \\ \lceil n_{j-1}/b \rceil & \text{if } j > 0 . \end{cases} \tag{4.27}$$



**Figure 4.8** The recursion tree generated by  $T(n) = aT(\lceil n/b \rceil) + f(n)$ . The recursive argument  $n_j$  is given by equation (4.27).

Our first goal is to determine the depth  $k$  such that  $n_k$  is a constant. Using the inequality  $\lceil x \rceil \leq x + 1$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 n_0 &\leq n, \\
 n_1 &\leq \frac{n}{b} + 1, \\
 n_2 &\leq \frac{n}{b^2} + \frac{1}{b} + 1, \\
 n_3 &\leq \frac{n}{b^3} + \frac{1}{b^2} + \frac{1}{b} + 1, \\
 &\vdots
 \end{aligned}$$

In general, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
n_j &\leq \frac{n}{b^j} + \sum_{i=0}^{j-1} \frac{1}{b^i} \\
&< \frac{n}{b^j} + \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{b^i} \\
&= \frac{n}{b^j} + \frac{b}{b-1}.
\end{aligned}$$

Letting  $j = \lfloor \log_b n \rfloor$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
n_{\lfloor \log_b n \rfloor} &< \frac{n}{b^{\lfloor \log_b n \rfloor}} + \frac{b}{b-1} \\
&< \frac{n}{b^{\log_b n - 1}} + \frac{b}{b-1} \\
&= \frac{n}{n/b} + \frac{b}{b-1} \\
&= b + \frac{b}{b-1} \\
&= O(1),
\end{aligned}$$

and thus we see that at depth  $\lfloor \log_b n \rfloor$ , the problem size is at most a constant.

From Figure 4.8, we see that

$$T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a}) + \sum_{j=0}^{\lfloor \log_b n \rfloor - 1} a^j f(n_j), \quad (4.28)$$

which is much the same as equation (4.21), except that  $n$  is an arbitrary integer and not restricted to be an exact power of  $b$ .

We can now evaluate the summation

$$g(n) = \sum_{j=0}^{\lfloor \log_b n \rfloor - 1} a^j f(n_j) \quad (4.29)$$

from equation (4.28) in a manner analogous to the proof of Lemma 4.3. Beginning with case 3, if  $af(\lceil n/b \rceil) \leq cf(n)$  for  $n > b + b/(b-1)$ , where  $c < 1$  is a constant, then it follows that  $a^j f(n_j) \leq c^j f(n)$ . Therefore, we can evaluate the sum in equation (4.29) just as in Lemma 4.3. For case 2, we have  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ . If we can show that  $f(n_j) = O(n^{\log_b a} / a^j) = O((n/b^j)^{\log_b a})$ , then the proof for case 2 of Lemma 4.3 will go through. Observe that  $j \leq \lfloor \log_b n \rfloor$  implies  $b^j / n \leq 1$ . The bound  $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a})$  implies that there exists a constant  $c > 0$  such that for all sufficiently large  $n_j$ ,



$$\begin{aligned}
f(n_j) &\leq c \left( \frac{n}{b^j} + \frac{b}{b-1} \right)^{\log_b a} \\
&= c \left( \frac{n}{b^j} \left( 1 + \frac{b^j}{n} \cdot \frac{b}{b-1} \right) \right)^{\log_b a} \\
&= c \left( \frac{n^{\log_b a}}{a^j} \right) \left( 1 + \left( \frac{b^j}{n} \cdot \frac{b}{b-1} \right) \right)^{\log_b a} \\
&\leq c \left( \frac{n^{\log_b a}}{a^j} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{b}{b-1} \right)^{\log_b a} \\
&= O \left( \frac{n^{\log_b a}}{a^j} \right),
\end{aligned}$$

since  $c(1 + b/(b-1))^{\log_b a}$  is a constant. Thus, we have proved case 2. The proof of case 1 is almost identical. The key is to prove the bound  $f(n_j) = O((n/b^j)^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$ , which is similar to the corresponding proof of case 2, though the algebra is more intricate.

We have now proved the upper bounds in the master theorem for all integers  $n$ . The proof of the lower bounds is similar.

## Exercises

### 4.6-1 ★

Give a simple and exact expression for  $n_j$  in equation (4.27) for the case in which  $b$  is a positive integer instead of an arbitrary real number.

### 4.6-2 ★

Show that if  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg^k n)$ , where  $k \geq 0$ , then the master recurrence has solution  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg^{k+1} n)$ . For simplicity, confine your analysis to exact powers of  $b$ .

### 4.6-3 ★

Show that case 3 of the master theorem is overstated, in the sense that the regularity condition  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$  for some constant  $c < 1$  implies that there exists a constant  $\epsilon > 0$  such that  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$ .

---

**Problems**
**4-1 Recurrence examples**

Give asymptotic upper and lower bounds for  $T(n)$  in each of the following recurrences. Assume that  $T(n)$  is constant for  $n \leq 2$ . Make your bounds as tight as possible, and justify your answers.

- a.  $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + n^4$ .
- b.  $T(n) = T(7n/10) + n$ .
- c.  $T(n) = 16T(n/4) + n^2$ .
- d.  $T(n) = 7T(n/3) + n^2$ .
- e.  $T(n) = 7T(n/2) + n^2$ .
- f.  $T(n) = 2T(n/4) + \sqrt{n}$ .
- g.  $T(n) = T(n-2) + n^2$ .

**4-2 Parameter-passing costs**

Throughout this book, we assume that parameter passing during procedure calls takes constant time, even if an  $N$ -element array is being passed. This assumption is valid in most systems because a pointer to the array is passed, not the array itself. This problem examines the implications of three parameter-passing strategies:

1. An array is passed by pointer. Time =  $\Theta(1)$ .
  2. An array is passed by copying. Time =  $\Theta(N)$ , where  $N$  is the size of the array.
  3. An array is passed by copying only the subrange that might be accessed by the called procedure. Time =  $\Theta(q - p + 1)$  if the subarray  $A[p \dots q]$  is passed.
- a. Consider the recursive binary search algorithm for finding a number in a sorted array (see Exercise 2.3-5). Give recurrences for the worst-case running times of binary search when arrays are passed using each of the three methods above, and give good upper bounds on the solutions of the recurrences. Let  $N$  be the size of the original problem and  $n$  be the size of a subproblem.
  - b. Redo part (a) for the MERGE-SORT algorithm from Section 2.3.1.

**4-3 More recurrence examples**

Give asymptotic upper and lower bounds for  $T(n)$  in each of the following recurrences. Assume that  $T(n)$  is constant for sufficiently small  $n$ . Make your bounds as tight as possible, and justify your answers.

- a.  $T(n) = 4T(n/3) + n \lg n$ .
- b.  $T(n) = 3T(n/3) + n/\lg n$ .
- c.  $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n^2\sqrt{n}$ .
- d.  $T(n) = 3T(n/3 - 2) + n/2$ .
- e.  $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + n/\lg n$ .
- f.  $T(n) = T(n/2) + T(n/4) + T(n/8) + n$ .
- g.  $T(n) = T(n - 1) + 1/n$ .
- h.  $T(n) = T(n - 1) + \lg n$ .
- i.  $T(n) = T(n - 2) + 1/\lg n$ .
- j.  $T(n) = \sqrt{n}T(\sqrt{n}) + n$ .

**4-4 Fibonacci numbers**

This problem develops properties of the Fibonacci numbers, which are defined by recurrence (3.22). We shall use the technique of generating functions to solve the Fibonacci recurrence. Define the **generating function** (or **formal power series**)  $\mathcal{F}$  as

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{F}(z) &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} F_i z^i \\ &= 0 + z + z^2 + 2z^3 + 3z^4 + 5z^5 + 8z^6 + 13z^7 + 21z^8 + \cdots,\end{aligned}$$

where  $F_i$  is the  $i$ th Fibonacci number.

- a. Show that  $\mathcal{F}(z) = z + z\mathcal{F}(z) + z^2\mathcal{F}(z)$ .

b. Show that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{F}(z) &= \frac{z}{1-z-z^2} \\ &= \frac{z}{(1-\phi z)(1-\hat{\phi} z)} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left( \frac{1}{1-\phi z} - \frac{1}{1-\hat{\phi} z} \right),\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\phi = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} = 1.61803\dots$$

and

$$\hat{\phi} = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} = -0.61803\dots$$

c. Show that

$$\mathcal{F}(z) = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} (\phi^i - \hat{\phi}^i) z^i.$$

d. Use part (c) to prove that  $F_i = \phi^i / \sqrt{5}$  for  $i > 0$ , rounded to the nearest integer. (Hint: Observe that  $|\hat{\phi}| < 1$ .)

#### 4-5 Chip testing

Professor Diogenes has  $n$  supposedly identical integrated-circuit chips that in principle are capable of testing each other. The professor's test jig accommodates two chips at a time. When the jig is loaded, each chip tests the other and reports whether it is good or bad. A good chip always reports accurately whether the other chip is good or bad, but the professor cannot trust the answer of a bad chip. Thus, the four possible outcomes of a test are as follows:

Chip $A$ says	Chip $B$ says	Conclusion
$B$ is good	$A$ is good	both are good, or both are bad
$B$ is good	$A$ is bad	at least one is bad
$B$ is bad	$A$ is good	at least one is bad
$B$ is bad	$A$ is bad	at least one is bad

a. Show that if at least  $n/2$  chips are bad, the professor cannot necessarily determine which chips are good using any strategy based on this kind of pairwise test. Assume that the bad chips can conspire to fool the professor.

- b. Consider the problem of finding a single good chip from among  $n$  chips, assuming that more than  $n/2$  of the chips are good. Show that  $\lfloor n/2 \rfloor$  pairwise tests are sufficient to reduce the problem to one of nearly half the size.
- c. Show that the good chips can be identified with  $\Theta(n)$  pairwise tests, assuming that more than  $n/2$  of the chips are good. Give and solve the recurrence that describes the number of tests.

#### 4-6 Monge arrays

An  $m \times n$  array  $A$  of real numbers is a **Monge array** if for all  $i, j, k$ , and  $l$  such that  $1 \leq i < k \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j < l \leq n$ , we have

$$A[i, j] + A[k, l] \leq A[i, l] + A[k, j] .$$

In other words, whenever we pick two rows and two columns of a Monge array and consider the four elements at the intersections of the rows and the columns, the sum of the upper-left and lower-right elements is less than or equal to the sum of the lower-left and upper-right elements. For example, the following array is Monge:

10	17	13	28	23
17	22	16	29	23
24	28	22	34	24
11	13	6	17	7
45	44	32	37	23
36	33	19	21	6
75	66	51	53	34

- a. Prove that an array is Monge if and only if for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, m - 1$  and  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$ , we have

$$A[i, j] + A[i + 1, j + 1] \leq A[i, j + 1] + A[i + 1, j] .$$

(Hint: For the “if” part, use induction separately on rows and columns.)

- b. The following array is not Monge. Change one element in order to make it Monge. (Hint: Use part (a).)

37	23	22	32
21	6	7	10
53	34	30	31
32	13	9	6
43	21	15	8

- c. Let  $f(i)$  be the index of the column containing the leftmost minimum element of row  $i$ . Prove that  $f(1) \leq f(2) \leq \dots \leq f(m)$  for any  $m \times n$  Monge array.
- d. Here is a description of a divide-and-conquer algorithm that computes the leftmost minimum element in each row of an  $m \times n$  Monge array  $A$ :
 

Construct a submatrix  $A'$  of  $A$  consisting of the even-numbered rows of  $A$ . Recursively determine the leftmost minimum for each row of  $A'$ . Then compute the leftmost minimum in the odd-numbered rows of  $A$ .

Explain how to compute the leftmost minimum in the odd-numbered rows of  $A$  (given that the leftmost minimum of the even-numbered rows is known) in  $O(m + n)$  time.
- e. Write the recurrence describing the running time of the algorithm described in part (d). Show that its solution is  $O(m + n \log m)$ .

---

## Chapter notes

Divide-and-conquer as a technique for designing algorithms dates back to at least 1962 in an article by Karatsuba and Ofman [194]. It might have been used well before then, however; according to Heideman, Johnson, and Burrus [163], C. F. Gauss devised the first fast Fourier transform algorithm in 1805, and Gauss's formulation breaks the problem into smaller subproblems whose solutions are combined.

The maximum-subarray problem in Section 4.1 is a minor variation on a problem studied by Bentley [43, Chapter 7].

Strassen's algorithm [325] caused much excitement when it was published in 1969. Before then, few imagined the possibility of an algorithm asymptotically faster than the basic SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY procedure. The asymptotic upper bound for matrix multiplication has been improved since then. The most asymptotically efficient algorithm for multiplying  $n \times n$  matrices to date, due to Coppersmith and Winograd [78], has a running time of  $O(n^{2.376})$ . The best lower bound known is just the obvious  $\Omega(n^2)$  bound (obvious because we must fill in  $n^2$  elements of the product matrix).

From a practical point of view, Strassen's algorithm is often not the method of choice for matrix multiplication, for four reasons:

1. The constant factor hidden in the  $\Theta(n^{\lg 7})$  running time of Strassen's algorithm is larger than the constant factor in the  $\Theta(n^3)$ -time SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY procedure.
2. When the matrices are sparse, methods tailored for sparse matrices are faster.

3. Strassen's algorithm is not quite as numerically stable as SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY. In other words, because of the limited precision of computer arithmetic on noninteger values, larger errors accumulate in Strassen's algorithm than in SQUARE-MATRIX-MULTIPLY.
4. The submatrices formed at the levels of recursion consume space.

The latter two reasons were mitigated around 1990. Higham [167] demonstrated that the difference in numerical stability had been overemphasized; although Strassen's algorithm is too numerically unstable for some applications, it is within acceptable limits for others. Bailey, Lee, and Simon [32] discuss techniques for reducing the memory requirements for Strassen's algorithm.

In practice, fast matrix-multiplication implementations for dense matrices use Strassen's algorithm for matrix sizes above a "crossover point," and they switch to a simpler method once the subproblem size reduces to below the crossover point. The exact value of the crossover point is highly system dependent. Analyses that count operations but ignore effects from caches and pipelining have produced crossover points as low as  $n = 8$  (by Higham [167]) or  $n = 12$  (by Huss-Lederman et al. [186]). D'Alberto and Nicolau [81] developed an adaptive scheme, which determines the crossover point by benchmarking when their software package is installed. They found crossover points on various systems ranging from  $n = 400$  to  $n = 2150$ , and they could not find a crossover point on a couple of systems.

Recurrences were studied as early as 1202 by L. Fibonacci, for whom the Fibonacci numbers are named. A. De Moivre introduced the method of generating functions (see Problem 4-4) for solving recurrences. The master method is adapted from Bentley, Haken, and Saxe [44], which provides the extended method justified by Exercise 4.6-2. Knuth [209] and Liu [237] show how to solve linear recurrences using the method of generating functions. Purdom and Brown [287] and Graham, Knuth, and Patashnik [152] contain extended discussions of recurrence solving.

Several researchers, including Akra and Bazzi [13], Roura [299], Verma [346], and Yap [360], have given methods for solving more general divide-and-conquer recurrences than are solved by the master method. We describe the result of Akra and Bazzi here, as modified by Leighton [228]. The Akra-Bazzi method works for recurrences of the form

$$T(x) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } 1 \leq x \leq x_0, \\ \sum_{i=1}^k a_i T(b_i x) + f(x) & \text{if } x > x_0, \end{cases} \quad (4.30)$$

where

- $x \geq 1$  is a real number,
- $x_0$  is a constant such that  $x_0 \geq 1/b_i$  and  $x_0 \geq 1/(1 - b_i)$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,
- $a_i$  is a positive constant for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,

- $b_i$  is a constant in the range  $0 < b_i < 1$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,
- $k \geq 1$  is an integer constant, and
- $f(x)$  is a nonnegative function that satisfies the **polynomial-growth condition**: there exist positive constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  such that for all  $x \geq 1$ , for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ , and for all  $u$  such that  $b_i x \leq u \leq x$ , we have  $c_1 f(x) \leq f(u) \leq c_2 f(x)$ . (If  $|f'(x)|$  is upper-bounded by some polynomial in  $x$ , then  $f(x)$  satisfies the polynomial-growth condition. For example,  $f(x) = x^\alpha \lg^\beta x$  satisfies this condition for any real constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .)

Although the master method does not apply to a recurrence such as  $T(n) = T(\lfloor n/3 \rfloor) + T(\lfloor 2n/3 \rfloor) + O(n)$ , the Akra-Bazzi method does. To solve the recurrence (4.30), we first find the unique real number  $p$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^k a_i b_i^p = 1$ . (Such a  $p$  always exists.) The solution to the recurrence is then

$$T(n) = \Theta \left( x^p \left( 1 + \int_1^x \frac{f(u)}{u^{p+1}} du \right) \right).$$

The Akra-Bazzi method can be somewhat difficult to use, but it serves in solving recurrences that model division of the problem into substantially unequally sized subproblems. The master method is simpler to use, but it applies only when subproblem sizes are equal.



---

## 5 Probabilistic Analysis and Randomized Algorithms

This chapter introduces probabilistic analysis and randomized algorithms. If you are unfamiliar with the basics of probability theory, you should read Appendix C, which reviews this material. We shall revisit probabilistic analysis and randomized algorithms several times throughout this book.

---

### 5.1 The hiring problem

Suppose that you need to hire a new office assistant. Your previous attempts at hiring have been unsuccessful, and you decide to use an employment agency. The employment agency sends you one candidate each day. You interview that person and then decide either to hire that person or not. You must pay the employment agency a small fee to interview an applicant. To actually hire an applicant is more costly, however, since you must fire your current office assistant and pay a substantial hiring fee to the employment agency. You are committed to having, at all times, the best possible person for the job. Therefore, you decide that, after interviewing each applicant, if that applicant is better qualified than the current office assistant, you will fire the current office assistant and hire the new applicant. You are willing to pay the resulting price of this strategy, but you wish to estimate what that price will be.

The procedure HIRE-ASSISTANT, given below, expresses this strategy for hiring in pseudocode. It assumes that the candidates for the office assistant job are numbered 1 through  $n$ . The procedure assumes that you are able to, after interviewing candidate  $i$ , determine whether candidate  $i$  is the best candidate you have seen so far. To initialize, the procedure creates a dummy candidate, numbered 0, who is less qualified than each of the other candidates.

HIRE-ASSISTANT( $n$ )

```

1  best = 0           // candidate 0 is a least-qualified dummy candidate
2  for  $i = 1$  to  $n$ 
3      interview candidate  $i$ 
4      if candidate  $i$  is better than candidate best
5          best =  $i$ 
6          hire candidate  $i$ 
```

The cost model for this problem differs from the model described in Chapter 2. We focus not on the running time of HIRE-ASSISTANT, but instead on the costs incurred by interviewing and hiring. On the surface, analyzing the cost of this algorithm may seem very different from analyzing the running time of, say, merge sort. The analytical techniques used, however, are identical whether we are analyzing cost or running time. In either case, we are counting the number of times certain basic operations are executed.

Interviewing has a low cost, say  $c_i$ , whereas hiring is expensive, costing  $c_h$ . Letting  $m$  be the number of people hired, the total cost associated with this algorithm is  $O(c_i n + c_h m)$ . No matter how many people we hire, we always interview  $n$  candidates and thus always incur the cost  $c_i n$  associated with interviewing. We therefore concentrate on analyzing  $c_h m$ , the hiring cost. This quantity varies with each run of the algorithm.

This scenario serves as a model for a common computational paradigm. We often need to find the maximum or minimum value in a sequence by examining each element of the sequence and maintaining a current “winner.” The hiring problem models how often we update our notion of which element is currently winning.

### Worst-case analysis

In the worst case, we actually hire every candidate that we interview. This situation occurs if the candidates come in strictly increasing order of quality, in which case we hire  $n$  times, for a total hiring cost of  $O(c_h n)$ .

Of course, the candidates do not always come in increasing order of quality. In fact, we have no idea about the order in which they arrive, nor do we have any control over this order. Therefore, it is natural to ask what we expect to happen in a typical or average case.

### Probabilistic analysis

**Probabilistic analysis** is the use of probability in the analysis of problems. Most commonly, we use probabilistic analysis to analyze the running time of an algorithm. Sometimes we use it to analyze other quantities, such as the hiring cost

in procedure HIRE-ASSISTANT. In order to perform a probabilistic analysis, we must use knowledge of, or make assumptions about, the distribution of the inputs. Then we analyze our algorithm, computing an average-case running time, where we take the average over the distribution of the possible inputs. Thus we are, in effect, averaging the running time over all possible inputs. When reporting such a running time, we will refer to it as the *average-case running time*.

We must be very careful in deciding on the distribution of inputs. For some problems, we may reasonably assume something about the set of all possible inputs, and then we can use probabilistic analysis as a technique for designing an efficient algorithm and as a means for gaining insight into a problem. For other problems, we cannot describe a reasonable input distribution, and in these cases we cannot use probabilistic analysis.

For the hiring problem, we can assume that the applicants come in a random order. What does that mean for this problem? We assume that we can compare any two candidates and decide which one is better qualified; that is, there is a total order on the candidates. (See Appendix B for the definition of a total order.) Thus, we can rank each candidate with a unique number from 1 through  $n$ , using  $rank(i)$  to denote the rank of applicant  $i$ , and adopt the convention that a higher rank corresponds to a better qualified applicant. The ordered list  $\langle rank(1), rank(2), \dots, rank(n) \rangle$  is a permutation of the list  $\langle 1, 2, \dots, n \rangle$ . Saying that the applicants come in a random order is equivalent to saying that this list of ranks is equally likely to be any one of the  $n!$  permutations of the numbers 1 through  $n$ . Alternatively, we say that the ranks form a *uniform random permutation*; that is, each of the possible  $n!$  permutations appears with equal probability.

Section 5.2 contains a probabilistic analysis of the hiring problem.

## Randomized algorithms

In order to use probabilistic analysis, we need to know something about the distribution of the inputs. In many cases, we know very little about the input distribution. Even if we do know something about the distribution, we may not be able to model this knowledge computationally. Yet we often can use probability and randomness as a tool for algorithm design and analysis, by making the behavior of part of the algorithm random.

In the hiring problem, it may seem as if the candidates are being presented to us in a random order, but we have no way of knowing whether or not they really are. Thus, in order to develop a randomized algorithm for the hiring problem, we must have greater control over the order in which we interview the candidates. We will, therefore, change the model slightly. We say that the employment agency has  $n$  candidates, and they send us a list of the candidates in advance. On each day, we choose, randomly, which candidate to interview. Although we know nothing about

the candidates (besides their names), we have made a significant change. Instead of relying on a guess that the candidates come to us in a random order, we have instead gained control of the process and enforced a random order.

More generally, we call an algorithm *randomized* if its behavior is determined not only by its input but also by values produced by a *random-number generator*. We shall assume that we have at our disposal a random-number generator `RANDOM`. A call to `RANDOM( $a, b$ )` returns an integer between  $a$  and  $b$ , inclusive, with each such integer being equally likely. For example, `RANDOM(0, 1)` produces 0 with probability  $1/2$ , and it produces 1 with probability  $1/2$ . A call to `RANDOM(3, 7)` returns either 3, 4, 5, 6, or 7, each with probability  $1/5$ . Each integer returned by `RANDOM` is independent of the integers returned on previous calls. You may imagine `RANDOM` as rolling a  $(b - a + 1)$ -sided die to obtain its output. (In practice, most programming environments offer a *pseudorandom-number generator*: a deterministic algorithm returning numbers that “look” statistically random.)

When analyzing the running time of a randomized algorithm, we take the expectation of the running time over the distribution of values returned by the random number generator. We distinguish these algorithms from those in which the input is random by referring to the running time of a randomized algorithm as an *expected running time*. In general, we discuss the average-case running time when the probability distribution is over the inputs to the algorithm, and we discuss the expected running time when the algorithm itself makes random choices.

## Exercises

### 5.1-1

Show that the assumption that we are always able to determine which candidate is best, in line 4 of procedure `HIRE-ASSISTANT`, implies that we know a total order on the ranks of the candidates.

### 5.1-2 ★

Describe an implementation of the procedure `RANDOM( $a, b$ )` that only makes calls to `RANDOM(0, 1)`. What is the expected running time of your procedure, as a function of  $a$  and  $b$ ?

### 5.1-3 ★

Suppose that you want to output 0 with probability  $1/2$  and 1 with probability  $1/2$ . At your disposal is a procedure `BIASED-RANDOM`, that outputs either 0 or 1. It outputs 1 with some probability  $p$  and 0 with probability  $1 - p$ , where  $0 < p < 1$ , but you do not know what  $p$  is. Give an algorithm that uses `BIASED-RANDOM` as a subroutine, and returns an unbiased answer, returning 0 with probability  $1/2$

and 1 with probability  $1/2$ . What is the expected running time of your algorithm as a function of  $p$ ?

---

## 5.2 Indicator random variables

In order to analyze many algorithms, including the hiring problem, we use indicator random variables. Indicator random variables provide a convenient method for converting between probabilities and expectations. Suppose we are given a sample space  $S$  and an event  $A$ . Then the *indicator random variable*  $I\{A\}$  associated with event  $A$  is defined as

$$I\{A\} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } A \text{ occurs,} \\ 0 & \text{if } A \text{ does not occur.} \end{cases} \quad (5.1)$$

As a simple example, let us determine the expected number of heads that we obtain when flipping a fair coin. Our sample space is  $S = \{H, T\}$ , with  $\Pr\{H\} = \Pr\{T\} = 1/2$ . We can then define an indicator random variable  $X_H$ , associated with the coin coming up heads, which is the event  $H$ . This variable counts the number of heads obtained in this flip, and it is 1 if the coin comes up heads and 0 otherwise. We write

$$\begin{aligned} X_H &= I\{H\} \\ &= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } H \text{ occurs,} \\ 0 & \text{if } T \text{ occurs.} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

The expected number of heads obtained in one flip of the coin is simply the expected value of our indicator variable  $X_H$ :

$$\begin{aligned} E[X_H] &= E[I\{H\}] \\ &= 1 \cdot \Pr\{H\} + 0 \cdot \Pr\{T\} \\ &= 1 \cdot (1/2) + 0 \cdot (1/2) \\ &= 1/2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the expected number of heads obtained by one flip of a fair coin is  $1/2$ . As the following lemma shows, the expected value of an indicator random variable associated with an event  $A$  is equal to the probability that  $A$  occurs.

### **Lemma 5.1**

Given a sample space  $S$  and an event  $A$  in the sample space  $S$ , let  $X_A = I\{A\}$ . Then  $E[X_A] = \Pr\{A\}$ .

**Proof** By the definition of an indicator random variable from equation (5.1) and the definition of expected value, we have

$$\begin{aligned} E[X_A] &= E[I\{A\}] \\ &= 1 \cdot \Pr\{A\} + 0 \cdot \Pr\{\bar{A}\} \\ &= \Pr\{A\} , \end{aligned}$$

where  $\bar{A}$  denotes  $S - A$ , the complement of  $A$ . ■

Although indicator random variables may seem cumbersome for an application such as counting the expected number of heads on a flip of a single coin, they are useful for analyzing situations in which we perform repeated random trials. For example, indicator random variables give us a simple way to arrive at the result of equation (C.37). In this equation, we compute the number of heads in  $n$  coin flips by considering separately the probability of obtaining 0 heads, 1 head, 2 heads, etc. The simpler method proposed in equation (C.38) instead uses indicator random variables implicitly. Making this argument more explicit, we let  $X_i$  be the indicator random variable associated with the event in which the  $i$ th flip comes up heads:  $X_i = I\{\text{the } i\text{th flip results in the event } H\}$ . Let  $X$  be the random variable denoting the total number of heads in the  $n$  coin flips, so that

$$X = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i .$$

We wish to compute the expected number of heads, and so we take the expectation of both sides of the above equation to obtain

$$E[X] = E\left[\sum_{i=1}^n X_i\right] .$$

The above equation gives the expectation of the sum of  $n$  indicator random variables. By Lemma 5.1, we can easily compute the expectation of each of the random variables. By equation (C.21)—linearity of expectation—it is easy to compute the expectation of the sum: it equals the sum of the expectations of the  $n$  random variables. Linearity of expectation makes the use of indicator random variables a powerful analytical technique; it applies even when there is dependence among the random variables. We now can easily compute the expected number of heads:

$$\begin{aligned}
E[X] &= E\left[\sum_{i=1}^n X_i\right] \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n E[X_i] \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n 1/2 \\
&= n/2.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, compared to the method used in equation (C.37), indicator random variables greatly simplify the calculation. We shall use indicator random variables throughout this book.

### Analysis of the hiring problem using indicator random variables

Returning to the hiring problem, we now wish to compute the expected number of times that we hire a new office assistant. In order to use a probabilistic analysis, we assume that the candidates arrive in a random order, as discussed in the previous section. (We shall see in Section 5.3 how to remove this assumption.) Let  $X$  be the random variable whose value equals the number of times we hire a new office assistant. We could then apply the definition of expected value from equation (C.20) to obtain

$$E[X] = \sum_{x=1}^n x \Pr\{X = x\},$$

but this calculation would be cumbersome. We shall instead use indicator random variables to greatly simplify the calculation.

To use indicator random variables, instead of computing  $E[X]$  by defining one variable associated with the number of times we hire a new office assistant, we define  $n$  variables related to whether or not each particular candidate is hired. In particular, we let  $X_i$  be the indicator random variable associated with the event in which the  $i$ th candidate is hired. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
X_i &= I\{\text{candidate } i \text{ is hired}\} \\
&= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if candidate } i \text{ is hired,} \\ 0 & \text{if candidate } i \text{ is not hired,} \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$X = X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n. \tag{5.2}$$

By Lemma 5.1, we have that

$$E[X_i] = \Pr\{\text{candidate } i \text{ is hired}\} ,$$

and we must therefore compute the probability that lines 5–6 of HIRE-ASSISTANT are executed.

Candidate  $i$  is hired, in line 6, exactly when candidate  $i$  is better than each of candidates 1 through  $i - 1$ . Because we have assumed that the candidates arrive in a random order, the first  $i$  candidates have appeared in a random order. Any one of these first  $i$  candidates is equally likely to be the best-qualified so far. Candidate  $i$  has a probability of  $1/i$  of being better qualified than candidates 1 through  $i - 1$  and thus a probability of  $1/i$  of being hired. By Lemma 5.1, we conclude that

$$E[X_i] = 1/i . \tag{5.3}$$

Now we can compute  $E[X]$ :

$$E[X] = E\left[\sum_{i=1}^n X_i\right] \quad (\text{by equation (5.2)}) \tag{5.4}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n E[X_i] \quad (\text{by linearity of expectation})$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n 1/i \quad (\text{by equation (5.3)})$$

$$= \ln n + O(1) \quad (\text{by equation (A.7)}) . \tag{5.5}$$

Even though we interview  $n$  people, we actually hire only approximately  $\ln n$  of them, on average. We summarize this result in the following lemma.

**Lemma 5.2**

Assuming that the candidates are presented in a random order, algorithm HIRE-ASSISTANT has an average-case total hiring cost of  $O(c_h \ln n)$ .

**Proof** The bound follows immediately from our definition of the hiring cost and equation (5.5), which shows that the expected number of hires is approximately  $\ln n$ . ■

The average-case hiring cost is a significant improvement over the worst-case hiring cost of  $O(c_h n)$ .



### Exercises

#### 5.2-1

In HIRE-ASSISTANT, assuming that the candidates are presented in a random order, what is the probability that you hire exactly one time? What is the probability that you hire exactly  $n$  times?

#### 5.2-2

In HIRE-ASSISTANT, assuming that the candidates are presented in a random order, what is the probability that you hire exactly twice?

#### 5.2-3

Use indicator random variables to compute the expected value of the sum of  $n$  dice.

#### 5.2-4

Use indicator random variables to solve the following problem, which is known as the *hat-check problem*. Each of  $n$  customers gives a hat to a hat-check person at a restaurant. The hat-check person gives the hats back to the customers in a random order. What is the expected number of customers who get back their own hat?

#### 5.2-5

Let  $A[1..n]$  be an array of  $n$  distinct numbers. If  $i < j$  and  $A[i] > A[j]$ , then the pair  $(i, j)$  is called an *inversion* of  $A$ . (See Problem 2-4 for more on inversions.) Suppose that the elements of  $A$  form a uniform random permutation of  $\langle 1, 2, \dots, n \rangle$ . Use indicator random variables to compute the expected number of inversions.

---

## 5.3 Randomized algorithms

In the previous section, we showed how knowing a distribution on the inputs can help us to analyze the average-case behavior of an algorithm. Many times, we do not have such knowledge, thus precluding an average-case analysis. As mentioned in Section 5.1, we may be able to use a randomized algorithm.

For a problem such as the hiring problem, in which it is helpful to assume that all permutations of the input are equally likely, a probabilistic analysis can guide the development of a randomized algorithm. Instead of assuming a distribution of inputs, we impose a distribution. In particular, before running the algorithm, we randomly permute the candidates in order to enforce the property that every permutation is equally likely. Although we have modified the algorithm, we still expect to hire a new office assistant approximately  $\ln n$  times. But now we expect

this to be the case for *any* input, rather than for inputs drawn from a particular distribution.

Let us further explore the distinction between probabilistic analysis and randomized algorithms. In Section 5.2, we claimed that, assuming that the candidates arrive in a random order, the expected number of times we hire a new office assistant is about  $\ln n$ . Note that the algorithm here is deterministic; for any particular input, the number of times a new office assistant is hired is always the same. Furthermore, the number of times we hire a new office assistant differs for different inputs, and it depends on the ranks of the various candidates. Since this number depends only on the ranks of the candidates, we can represent a particular input by listing, in order, the ranks of the candidates, i.e.,  $\langle \text{rank}(1), \text{rank}(2), \dots, \text{rank}(n) \rangle$ . Given the rank list  $A_1 = \langle 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 \rangle$ , a new office assistant is always hired 10 times, since each successive candidate is better than the previous one, and lines 5–6 are executed in each iteration. Given the list of ranks  $A_2 = \langle 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 \rangle$ , a new office assistant is hired only once, in the first iteration. Given a list of ranks  $A_3 = \langle 5, 2, 1, 8, 4, 7, 10, 9, 3, 6 \rangle$ , a new office assistant is hired three times, upon interviewing the candidates with ranks 5, 8, and 10. Recalling that the cost of our algorithm depends on how many times we hire a new office assistant, we see that there are expensive inputs such as  $A_1$ , inexpensive inputs such as  $A_2$ , and moderately expensive inputs such as  $A_3$ .

Consider, on the other hand, the randomized algorithm that first permutes the candidates and then determines the best candidate. In this case, we randomize in the algorithm, not in the input distribution. Given a particular input, say  $A_3$  above, we cannot say how many times the maximum is updated, because this quantity differs with each run of the algorithm. The first time we run the algorithm on  $A_3$ , it may produce the permutation  $A_1$  and perform 10 updates; but the second time we run the algorithm, we may produce the permutation  $A_2$  and perform only one update. The third time we run it, we may perform some other number of updates. Each time we run the algorithm, the execution depends on the random choices made and is likely to differ from the previous execution of the algorithm. For this algorithm and many other randomized algorithms, *no particular input elicits its worst-case behavior*. Even your worst enemy cannot produce a bad input array, since the random permutation makes the input order irrelevant. The randomized algorithm performs badly only if the random-number generator produces an “unlucky” permutation.

For the hiring problem, the only change needed in the code is to randomly permute the array.

RANDOMIZED-HIRE-ASSISTANT( $n$ )

```

1  randomly permute the list of candidates
2   $best = 0$            // candidate 0 is a least-qualified dummy candidate
3  for  $i = 1$  to  $n$ 
4      interview candidate  $i$ 
5      if candidate  $i$  is better than candidate  $best$ 
6           $best = i$ 
7          hire candidate  $i$ 

```

With this simple change, we have created a randomized algorithm whose performance matches that obtained by assuming that the candidates were presented in a random order.

### **Lemma 5.3**

The expected hiring cost of the procedure RANDOMIZED-HIRE-ASSISTANT is  $O(c_h \ln n)$ .

**Proof** After permuting the input array, we have achieved a situation identical to that of the probabilistic analysis of HIRE-ASSISTANT. ■

Comparing Lemmas 5.2 and 5.3 highlights the difference between probabilistic analysis and randomized algorithms. In Lemma 5.2, we make an assumption about the input. In Lemma 5.3, we make no such assumption, although randomizing the input takes some additional time. To remain consistent with our terminology, we couched Lemma 5.2 in terms of the average-case hiring cost and Lemma 5.3 in terms of the expected hiring cost. In the remainder of this section, we discuss some issues involved in randomly permuting inputs.

### **Randomly permuting arrays**

Many randomized algorithms randomize the input by permuting the given input array. (There are other ways to use randomization.) Here, we shall discuss two methods for doing so. We assume that we are given an array  $A$  which, without loss of generality, contains the elements 1 through  $n$ . Our goal is to produce a random permutation of the array.

One common method is to assign each element  $A[i]$  of the array a random priority  $P[i]$ , and then sort the elements of  $A$  according to these priorities. For example, if our initial array is  $A = \langle 1, 2, 3, 4 \rangle$  and we choose random priorities  $P = \langle 36, 3, 62, 19 \rangle$ , we would produce an array  $B = \langle 2, 4, 1, 3 \rangle$ , since the second priority is the smallest, followed by the fourth, then the first, and finally the third. We call this procedure PERMUTE-BY-SORTING:

PERMUTE-BY-SORTING( $A$ )

```

1   $n = A.length$ 
2  let  $P[1..n]$  be a new array
3  for  $i = 1$  to  $n$ 
4       $P[i] = \text{RANDOM}(1, n^3)$ 
5  sort  $A$ , using  $P$  as sort keys

```

Line 4 chooses a random number between 1 and  $n^3$ . We use a range of 1 to  $n^3$  to make it likely that all the priorities in  $P$  are unique. (Exercise 5.3-5 asks you to prove that the probability that all entries are unique is at least  $1 - 1/n$ , and Exercise 5.3-6 asks how to implement the algorithm even if two or more priorities are identical.) Let us assume that all the priorities are unique.

The time-consuming step in this procedure is the sorting in line 5. As we shall see in Chapter 8, if we use a comparison sort, sorting takes  $\Omega(n \lg n)$  time. We can achieve this lower bound, since we have seen that merge sort takes  $\Theta(n \lg n)$  time. (We shall see other comparison sorts that take  $\Theta(n \lg n)$  time in Part II. Exercise 8.3-4 asks you to solve the very similar problem of sorting numbers in the range 0 to  $n^3 - 1$  in  $O(n)$  time.) After sorting, if  $P[i]$  is the  $j$ th smallest priority, then  $A[i]$  lies in position  $j$  of the output. In this manner we obtain a permutation. It remains to prove that the procedure produces a **uniform random permutation**, that is, that the procedure is equally likely to produce every permutation of the numbers 1 through  $n$ .

#### **Lemma 5.4**

Procedure PERMUTE-BY-SORTING produces a uniform random permutation of the input, assuming that all priorities are distinct.

**Proof** We start by considering the particular permutation in which each element  $A[i]$  receives the  $i$ th smallest priority. We shall show that this permutation occurs with probability exactly  $1/n!$ . For  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , let  $E_i$  be the event that element  $A[i]$  receives the  $i$ th smallest priority. Then we wish to compute the probability that for all  $i$ , event  $E_i$  occurs, which is

$$\Pr\{E_1 \cap E_2 \cap E_3 \cap \dots \cap E_{n-1} \cap E_n\}.$$

Using Exercise C.2-5, this probability is equal to

$$\begin{aligned} &\Pr\{E_1\} \cdot \Pr\{E_2 \mid E_1\} \cdot \Pr\{E_3 \mid E_2 \cap E_1\} \cdot \Pr\{E_4 \mid E_3 \cap E_2 \cap E_1\} \\ &\quad \dots \Pr\{E_i \mid E_{i-1} \cap E_{i-2} \cap \dots \cap E_1\} \dots \Pr\{E_n \mid E_{n-1} \cap \dots \cap E_1\}. \end{aligned}$$

We have that  $\Pr\{E_1\} = 1/n$  because it is the probability that one priority chosen randomly out of a set of  $n$  is the smallest priority. Next, we observe

that  $\Pr\{E_2 \mid E_1\} = 1/(n-1)$  because given that element  $A[1]$  has the smallest priority, each of the remaining  $n-1$  elements has an equal chance of having the second smallest priority. In general, for  $i = 2, 3, \dots, n$ , we have that  $\Pr\{E_i \mid E_{i-1} \cap E_{i-2} \cap \dots \cap E_1\} = 1/(n-i+1)$ , since, given that elements  $A[1]$  through  $A[i-1]$  have the  $i-1$  smallest priorities (in order), each of the remaining  $n-(i-1)$  elements has an equal chance of having the  $i$ th smallest priority. Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr\{E_1 \cap E_2 \cap E_3 \cap \dots \cap E_{n-1} \cap E_n\} &= \left(\frac{1}{n}\right) \left(\frac{1}{n-1}\right) \dots \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \left(\frac{1}{1}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{n!}, \end{aligned}$$

and we have shown that the probability of obtaining the identity permutation is  $1/n!$ .

We can extend this proof to work for any permutation of priorities. Consider any fixed permutation  $\sigma = \langle \sigma(1), \sigma(2), \dots, \sigma(n) \rangle$  of the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . Let us denote by  $r_i$  the rank of the priority assigned to element  $A[i]$ , where the element with the  $j$ th smallest priority has rank  $j$ . If we define  $E_i$  as the event in which element  $A[i]$  receives the  $\sigma(i)$ th smallest priority, or  $r_i = \sigma(i)$ , the same proof still applies. Therefore, if we calculate the probability of obtaining any particular permutation, the calculation is identical to the one above, so that the probability of obtaining this permutation is also  $1/n!$ . ■

You might think that to prove that a permutation is a uniform random permutation, it suffices to show that, for each element  $A[i]$ , the probability that the element winds up in position  $j$  is  $1/n$ . Exercise 5.3-4 shows that this weaker condition is, in fact, insufficient.

A better method for generating a random permutation is to permute the given array in place. The procedure RANDOMIZE-IN-PLACE does so in  $O(n)$  time. In its  $i$ th iteration, it chooses the element  $A[i]$  randomly from among elements  $A[i]$  through  $A[n]$ . Subsequent to the  $i$ th iteration,  $A[i]$  is never altered.

RANDOMIZE-IN-PLACE( $A$ )

```

1   $n = A.length$ 
2  for  $i = 1$  to  $n$ 
3      swap  $A[i]$  with  $A[\text{RANDOM}(i, n)]$ 
```

We shall use a loop invariant to show that procedure RANDOMIZE-IN-PLACE produces a uniform random permutation. A ***k*-permutation** on a set of  $n$  elements is a sequence containing  $k$  of the  $n$  elements, with no repetitions. (See Appendix C.) There are  $n!/(n-k)!$  such possible  $k$ -permutations.

**Lemma 5.5**

Procedure RANDOMIZE-IN-PLACE computes a uniform random permutation.

**Proof** We use the following loop invariant:

Just prior to the  $i$ th iteration of the **for** loop of lines 2–3, for each possible  $(i - 1)$ -permutation of the  $n$  elements, the subarray  $A[1 \dots i - 1]$  contains this  $(i - 1)$ -permutation with probability  $(n - i + 1)!/n!$ .

We need to show that this invariant is true prior to the first loop iteration, that each iteration of the loop maintains the invariant, and that the invariant provides a useful property to show correctness when the loop terminates.

**Initialization:** Consider the situation just before the first loop iteration, so that  $i = 1$ . The loop invariant says that for each possible 0-permutation, the subarray  $A[1 \dots 0]$  contains this 0-permutation with probability  $(n - i + 1)!/n! = n!/n! = 1$ . The subarray  $A[1 \dots 0]$  is an empty subarray, and a 0-permutation has no elements. Thus,  $A[1 \dots 0]$  contains any 0-permutation with probability 1, and the loop invariant holds prior to the first iteration.

**Maintenance:** We assume that just before the  $i$ th iteration, each possible  $(i - 1)$ -permutation appears in the subarray  $A[1 \dots i - 1]$  with probability  $(n - i + 1)!/n!$ , and we shall show that after the  $i$ th iteration, each possible  $i$ -permutation appears in the subarray  $A[1 \dots i]$  with probability  $(n - i)!/n!$ . Incrementing  $i$  for the next iteration then maintains the loop invariant.

Let us examine the  $i$ th iteration. Consider a particular  $i$ -permutation, and denote the elements in it by  $\langle x_1, x_2, \dots, x_i \rangle$ . This permutation consists of an  $(i - 1)$ -permutation  $\langle x_1, \dots, x_{i-1} \rangle$  followed by the value  $x_i$  that the algorithm places in  $A[i]$ . Let  $E_1$  denote the event in which the first  $i - 1$  iterations have created the particular  $(i - 1)$ -permutation  $\langle x_1, \dots, x_{i-1} \rangle$  in  $A[1 \dots i - 1]$ . By the loop invariant,  $\Pr\{E_1\} = (n - i + 1)!/n!$ . Let  $E_2$  be the event that  $i$ th iteration puts  $x_i$  in position  $A[i]$ . The  $i$ -permutation  $\langle x_1, \dots, x_i \rangle$  appears in  $A[1 \dots i]$  precisely when both  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  occur, and so we wish to compute  $\Pr\{E_2 \cap E_1\}$ . Using equation (C.14), we have

$$\Pr\{E_2 \cap E_1\} = \Pr\{E_2 \mid E_1\} \Pr\{E_1\}.$$

The probability  $\Pr\{E_2 \mid E_1\}$  equals  $1/(n - i + 1)$  because in line 3 the algorithm chooses  $x_i$  randomly from the  $n - i + 1$  values in positions  $A[i \dots n]$ . Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\Pr\{E_2 \cap E_1\} &= \Pr\{E_2 \mid E_1\} \Pr\{E_1\} \\
&= \frac{1}{n-i+1} \cdot \frac{(n-i+1)!}{n!} \\
&= \frac{(n-i)!}{n!}.
\end{aligned}$$

**Termination:** At termination,  $i = n + 1$ , and we have that the subarray  $A[1 \dots n]$  is a given  $n$ -permutation with probability  $(n - (n + 1) + 1)!/n! = 0!/n! = 1/n!$ .

Thus, RANDOMIZE-IN-PLACE produces a uniform random permutation. ■

A randomized algorithm is often the simplest and most efficient way to solve a problem. We shall use randomized algorithms occasionally throughout this book.

## Exercises

### 5.3-1

Professor Marceau objects to the loop invariant used in the proof of Lemma 5.5. He questions whether it is true prior to the first iteration. He reasons that we could just as easily declare that an empty subarray contains no 0-permutations. Therefore, the probability that an empty subarray contains a 0-permutation should be 0, thus invalidating the loop invariant prior to the first iteration. Rewrite the procedure RANDOMIZE-IN-PLACE so that its associated loop invariant applies to a nonempty subarray prior to the first iteration, and modify the proof of Lemma 5.5 for your procedure.

### 5.3-2

Professor Kelp decides to write a procedure that produces at random any permutation besides the identity permutation. He proposes the following procedure:

PERMUTE-WITHOUT-IDENTITY( $A$ )

```

1   $n = A.length$ 
2  for  $i = 1$  to  $n - 1$ 
3      swap  $A[i]$  with  $A[\text{RANDOM}(i + 1, n)]$ 
```

Does this code do what Professor Kelp intends?

### 5.3-3

Suppose that instead of swapping element  $A[i]$  with a random element from the subarray  $A[i \dots n]$ , we swapped it with a random element from anywhere in the array:

PERMUTE-WITH-ALL( $A$ )

```

1   $n = A.length$ 
2  for  $i = 1$  to  $n$ 
3      swap  $A[i]$  with  $A[\text{RANDOM}(1, n)]$ 
```

Does this code produce a uniform random permutation? Why or why not?

#### 5.3-4

Professor Armstrong suggests the following procedure for generating a uniform random permutation:

PERMUTE-BY-CYCLIC( $A$ )

```

1   $n = A.length$ 
2  let  $B[1..n]$  be a new array
3   $offset = \text{RANDOM}(1, n)$ 
4  for  $i = 1$  to  $n$ 
5       $dest = i + offset$ 
6      if  $dest > n$ 
7           $dest = dest - n$ 
8       $B[dest] = A[i]$ 
9  return  $B$ 
```

Show that each element  $A[i]$  has a  $1/n$  probability of winding up in any particular position in  $B$ . Then show that Professor Armstrong is mistaken by showing that the resulting permutation is not uniformly random.

#### 5.3-5 ★

Prove that in the array  $P$  in procedure PERMUTE-BY-SORTING, the probability that all elements are unique is at least  $1 - 1/n$ .

#### 5.3-6

Explain how to implement the algorithm PERMUTE-BY-SORTING to handle the case in which two or more priorities are identical. That is, your algorithm should produce a uniform random permutation, even if two or more priorities are identical.

#### 5.3-7

Suppose we want to create a *random sample* of the set  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$ , that is, an  $m$ -element subset  $S$ , where  $0 \leq m \leq n$ , such that each  $m$ -subset is equally likely to be created. One way would be to set  $A[i] = i$  for  $i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$ , call RANDOMIZE-IN-PLACE( $A$ ), and then take just the first  $m$  array elements. This method would make  $n$  calls to the RANDOM procedure. If  $n$  is much larger than  $m$ , we can create a random sample with fewer calls to RANDOM. Show that



the following recursive procedure returns a random  $m$ -subset  $S$  of  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$ , in which each  $m$ -subset is equally likely, while making only  $m$  calls to RANDOM:

```

RANDOM-SAMPLE( $m, n$ )
1  if  $m == 0$ 
2      return  $\emptyset$ 
3  else  $S = \text{RANDOM-SAMPLE}(m - 1, n - 1)$ 
4       $i = \text{RANDOM}(1, n)$ 
5      if  $i \in S$ 
6           $S = S \cup \{n\}$ 
7      else  $S = S \cup \{i\}$ 
8      return  $S$ 

```

---

## ★ 5.4 Probabilistic analysis and further uses of indicator random variables

This advanced section further illustrates probabilistic analysis by way of four examples. The first determines the probability that in a room of  $k$  people, two of them share the same birthday. The second example examines what happens when we randomly toss balls into bins. The third investigates “streaks” of consecutive heads when we flip coins. The final example analyzes a variant of the hiring problem in which you have to make decisions without actually interviewing all the candidates.

### 5.4.1 The birthday paradox

Our first example is the *birthday paradox*. How many people must there be in a room before there is a 50% chance that two of them were born on the same day of the year? The answer is surprisingly few. The paradox is that it is in fact far fewer than the number of days in a year, or even half the number of days in a year, as we shall see.

To answer this question, we index the people in the room with the integers  $1, 2, \dots, k$ , where  $k$  is the number of people in the room. We ignore the issue of leap years and assume that all years have  $n = 365$  days. For  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ , let  $b_i$  be the day of the year on which person  $i$ 's birthday falls, where  $1 \leq b_i \leq n$ . We also assume that birthdays are uniformly distributed across the  $n$  days of the year, so that  $\Pr\{b_i = r\} = 1/n$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$  and  $r = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

The probability that two given people, say  $i$  and  $j$ , have matching birthdays depends on whether the random selection of birthdays is independent. We assume from now on that birthdays are independent, so that the probability that  $i$ 's birthday

and  $j$ 's birthday both fall on day  $r$  is

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr\{b_i = r \text{ and } b_j = r\} &= \Pr\{b_i = r\} \Pr\{b_j = r\} \\ &= 1/n^2.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the probability that they both fall on the same day is

$$\begin{aligned}\Pr\{b_i = b_j\} &= \sum_{r=1}^n \Pr\{b_i = r \text{ and } b_j = r\} \\ &= \sum_{r=1}^n (1/n^2) \\ &= 1/n.\end{aligned}\tag{5.6}$$

More intuitively, once  $b_i$  is chosen, the probability that  $b_j$  is chosen to be the same day is  $1/n$ . Thus, the probability that  $i$  and  $j$  have the same birthday is the same as the probability that the birthday of one of them falls on a given day. Notice, however, that this coincidence depends on the assumption that the birthdays are independent.

We can analyze the probability of at least 2 out of  $k$  people having matching birthdays by looking at the complementary event. The probability that at least two of the birthdays match is 1 minus the probability that all the birthdays are different. The event that  $k$  people have distinct birthdays is

$$B_k = \bigcap_{i=1}^k A_i,$$

where  $A_i$  is the event that person  $i$ 's birthday is different from person  $j$ 's for all  $j < i$ . Since we can write  $B_k = A_k \cap B_{k-1}$ , we obtain from equation (C.16) the recurrence

$$\Pr\{B_k\} = \Pr\{B_{k-1}\} \Pr\{A_k \mid B_{k-1}\},\tag{5.7}$$

where we take  $\Pr\{B_1\} = \Pr\{A_1\} = 1$  as an initial condition. In other words, the probability that  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_k$  are distinct birthdays is the probability that  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_{k-1}$  are distinct birthdays times the probability that  $b_k \neq b_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k-1$ , given that  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_{k-1}$  are distinct.

If  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_{k-1}$  are distinct, the conditional probability that  $b_k \neq b_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k-1$  is  $\Pr\{A_k \mid B_{k-1}\} = (n - k + 1)/n$ , since out of the  $n$  days,  $n - (k - 1)$  days are not taken. We iteratively apply the recurrence (5.7) to obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\Pr\{B_k\} &= \Pr\{B_{k-1}\} \Pr\{A_k \mid B_{k-1}\} \\
&= \Pr\{B_{k-2}\} \Pr\{A_{k-1} \mid B_{k-2}\} \Pr\{A_k \mid B_{k-1}\} \\
&\vdots \\
&= \Pr\{B_1\} \Pr\{A_2 \mid B_1\} \Pr\{A_3 \mid B_2\} \cdots \Pr\{A_k \mid B_{k-1}\} \\
&= 1 \cdot \left(\frac{n-1}{n}\right) \left(\frac{n-2}{n}\right) \cdots \left(\frac{n-k+1}{n}\right) \\
&= 1 \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{k-1}{n}\right).
\end{aligned}$$

Inequality (3.12),  $1 + x \leq e^x$ , gives us

$$\begin{aligned}
\Pr\{B_k\} &\leq e^{-1/n} e^{-2/n} \cdots e^{-(k-1)/n} \\
&= e^{-\sum_{i=1}^{k-1} i/n} \\
&= e^{-k(k-1)/2n} \\
&\leq 1/2
\end{aligned}$$

when  $-k(k-1)/2n \leq \ln(1/2)$ . The probability that all  $k$  birthdays are distinct is at most  $1/2$  when  $k(k-1) \geq 2n \ln 2$  or, solving the quadratic equation, when  $k \geq (1 + \sqrt{1 + (8 \ln 2)n})/2$ . For  $n = 365$ , we must have  $k \geq 23$ . Thus, if at least 23 people are in a room, the probability is at least  $1/2$  that at least two people have the same birthday. On Mars, a year is 669 Martian days long; it therefore takes 31 Martians to get the same effect.

### An analysis using indicator random variables

We can use indicator random variables to provide a simpler but approximate analysis of the birthday paradox. For each pair  $(i, j)$  of the  $k$  people in the room, we define the indicator random variable  $X_{ij}$ , for  $1 \leq i < j \leq k$ , by

$$\begin{aligned}
X_{ij} &= \mathbf{I}\{\text{person } i \text{ and person } j \text{ have the same birthday}\} \\
&= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if person } i \text{ and person } j \text{ have the same birthday,} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

By equation (5.6), the probability that two people have matching birthdays is  $1/n$ , and thus by Lemma 5.1, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
E[X_{ij}] &= \Pr\{\text{person } i \text{ and person } j \text{ have the same birthday}\} \\
&= 1/n.
\end{aligned}$$

Letting  $X$  be the random variable that counts the number of pairs of individuals having the same birthday, we have

$$X = \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=i+1}^k X_{ij} .$$

Taking expectations of both sides and applying linearity of expectation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} E[X] &= E \left[ \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=i+1}^k X_{ij} \right] \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=i+1}^k E[X_{ij}] \\ &= \binom{k}{2} \frac{1}{n} \\ &= \frac{k(k-1)}{2n} . \end{aligned}$$

When  $k(k-1) \geq 2n$ , therefore, the expected number of pairs of people with the same birthday is at least 1. Thus, if we have at least  $\sqrt{2n} + 1$  individuals in a room, we can expect at least two to have the same birthday. For  $n = 365$ , if  $k = 28$ , the expected number of pairs with the same birthday is  $(28 \cdot 27)/(2 \cdot 365) \approx 1.0356$ . Thus, with at least 28 people, we expect to find at least one matching pair of birthdays. On Mars, where a year is 669 Martian days long, we need at least 38 Martians.

The first analysis, which used only probabilities, determined the number of people required for the probability to exceed 1/2 that a matching pair of birthdays exists, and the second analysis, which used indicator random variables, determined the number such that the expected number of matching birthdays is 1. Although the exact numbers of people differ for the two situations, they are the same asymptotically:  $\Theta(\sqrt{n})$ .

### 5.4.2 Balls and bins

Consider a process in which we randomly toss identical balls into  $b$  bins, numbered  $1, 2, \dots, b$ . The tosses are independent, and on each toss the ball is equally likely to end up in any bin. The probability that a tossed ball lands in any given bin is  $1/b$ . Thus, the ball-tossing process is a sequence of Bernoulli trials (see Appendix C.4) with a probability  $1/b$  of success, where success means that the ball falls in the given bin. This model is particularly useful for analyzing hashing (see Chapter 11), and we can answer a variety of interesting questions about the ball-tossing process. (Problem C-1 asks additional questions about balls and bins.)

*How many balls fall in a given bin?* The number of balls that fall in a given bin follows the binomial distribution  $b(k; n, 1/b)$ . If we toss  $n$  balls, equation (C.37) tells us that the expected number of balls that fall in the given bin is  $n/b$ .

*How many balls must we toss, on the average, until a given bin contains a ball?* The number of tosses until the given bin receives a ball follows the geometric distribution with probability  $1/b$  and, by equation (C.32), the expected number of tosses until success is  $1/(1/b) = b$ .

*How many balls must we toss until every bin contains at least one ball?* Let us call a toss in which a ball falls into an empty bin a “hit.” We want to know the expected number  $n$  of tosses required to get  $b$  hits.

Using the hits, we can partition the  $n$  tosses into stages. The  $i$ th stage consists of the tosses after the  $(i - 1)$ st hit until the  $i$ th hit. The first stage consists of the first toss, since we are guaranteed to have a hit when all bins are empty. For each toss during the  $i$ th stage,  $i - 1$  bins contain balls and  $b - i + 1$  bins are empty. Thus, for each toss in the  $i$ th stage, the probability of obtaining a hit is  $(b - i + 1)/b$ .

Let  $n_i$  denote the number of tosses in the  $i$ th stage. Thus, the number of tosses required to get  $b$  hits is  $n = \sum_{i=1}^b n_i$ . Each random variable  $n_i$  has a geometric distribution with probability of success  $(b - i + 1)/b$  and thus, by equation (C.32), we have

$$E[n_i] = \frac{b}{b - i + 1}.$$

By linearity of expectation, we have

$$\begin{aligned} E[n] &= E\left[\sum_{i=1}^b n_i\right] \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^b E[n_i] \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^b \frac{b}{b - i + 1} \\ &= b \sum_{i=1}^b \frac{1}{i} \\ &= b(\ln b + O(1)) \quad (\text{by equation (A.7)}) . \end{aligned}$$

It therefore takes approximately  $b \ln b$  tosses before we can expect that every bin has a ball. This problem is also known as the ***coupon collector's problem***, which says that a person trying to collect each of  $b$  different coupons expects to acquire approximately  $b \ln b$  randomly obtained coupons in order to succeed.

### 5.4.3 Streaks

Suppose you flip a fair coin  $n$  times. What is the longest streak of consecutive heads that you expect to see? The answer is  $\Theta(\lg n)$ , as the following analysis shows.

We first prove that the expected length of the longest streak of heads is  $O(\lg n)$ . The probability that each coin flip is a head is  $1/2$ . Let  $A_{ik}$  be the event that a streak of heads of length at least  $k$  begins with the  $i$ th coin flip or, more precisely, the event that the  $k$  consecutive coin flips  $i, i+1, \dots, i+k-1$  yield only heads, where  $1 \leq k \leq n$  and  $1 \leq i \leq n-k+1$ . Since coin flips are mutually independent, for any given event  $A_{ik}$ , the probability that all  $k$  flips are heads is

$$\Pr\{A_{ik}\} = 1/2^k. \quad (5.8)$$

For  $k = 2 \lceil \lg n \rceil$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr\{A_{i, 2 \lceil \lg n \rceil}\} &= 1/2^{2 \lceil \lg n \rceil} \\ &\leq 1/2^{2 \lg n} \\ &= 1/n^2, \end{aligned}$$

and thus the probability that a streak of heads of length at least  $2 \lceil \lg n \rceil$  begins in position  $i$  is quite small. There are at most  $n - 2 \lceil \lg n \rceil + 1$  positions where such a streak can begin. The probability that a streak of heads of length at least  $2 \lceil \lg n \rceil$  begins anywhere is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr\left\{\bigcup_{i=1}^{n-2 \lceil \lg n \rceil + 1} A_{i, 2 \lceil \lg n \rceil}\right\} &\leq \sum_{i=1}^{n-2 \lceil \lg n \rceil + 1} 1/n^2 \\ &< \sum_{i=1}^n 1/n^2 \\ &= 1/n, \end{aligned} \quad (5.9)$$

since by Boole's inequality (C.19), the probability of a union of events is at most the sum of the probabilities of the individual events. (Note that Boole's inequality holds even for events such as these that are not independent.)

We now use inequality (5.9) to bound the length of the longest streak. For  $j = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n$ , let  $L_j$  be the event that the longest streak of heads has length exactly  $j$ , and let  $L$  be the length of the longest streak. By the definition of expected value, we have

$$E[L] = \sum_{j=0}^n j \Pr\{L_j\}. \quad (5.10)$$

We could try to evaluate this sum using upper bounds on each  $\Pr\{L_j\}$  similar to those computed in inequality (5.9). Unfortunately, this method would yield weak bounds. We can use some intuition gained by the above analysis to obtain a good bound, however. Informally, we observe that for no individual term in the summation in equation (5.10) are both the factors  $j$  and  $\Pr\{L_j\}$  large. Why? When  $j \geq 2 \lceil \lg n \rceil$ , then  $\Pr\{L_j\}$  is very small, and when  $j < 2 \lceil \lg n \rceil$ , then  $j$  is fairly small. More formally, we note that the events  $L_j$  for  $j = 0, 1, \dots, n$  are disjoint, and so the probability that a streak of heads of length at least  $2 \lceil \lg n \rceil$  begins anywhere is  $\sum_{j=2 \lceil \lg n \rceil}^n \Pr\{L_j\}$ . By inequality (5.9), we have  $\sum_{j=2 \lceil \lg n \rceil}^n \Pr\{L_j\} < 1/n$ . Also, noting that  $\sum_{j=0}^n \Pr\{L_j\} = 1$ , we have that  $\sum_{j=0}^{2 \lceil \lg n \rceil - 1} \Pr\{L_j\} \leq 1$ . Thus, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 E[L] &= \sum_{j=0}^n j \Pr\{L_j\} \\
 &= \sum_{j=0}^{2 \lceil \lg n \rceil - 1} j \Pr\{L_j\} + \sum_{j=2 \lceil \lg n \rceil}^n j \Pr\{L_j\} \\
 &< \sum_{j=0}^{2 \lceil \lg n \rceil - 1} (2 \lceil \lg n \rceil) \Pr\{L_j\} + \sum_{j=2 \lceil \lg n \rceil}^n n \Pr\{L_j\} \\
 &= 2 \lceil \lg n \rceil \sum_{j=0}^{2 \lceil \lg n \rceil - 1} \Pr\{L_j\} + n \sum_{j=2 \lceil \lg n \rceil}^n \Pr\{L_j\} \\
 &< 2 \lceil \lg n \rceil \cdot 1 + n \cdot (1/n) \\
 &= O(\lg n).
 \end{aligned}$$

The probability that a streak of heads exceeds  $r \lceil \lg n \rceil$  flips diminishes quickly with  $r$ . For  $r \geq 1$ , the probability that a streak of at least  $r \lceil \lg n \rceil$  heads starts in position  $i$  is

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Pr\{A_{i, r \lceil \lg n \rceil}\} &= 1/2^{r \lceil \lg n \rceil} \\
 &\leq 1/n^r.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the probability is at most  $n/n^r = 1/n^{r-1}$  that the longest streak is at least  $r \lceil \lg n \rceil$ , or equivalently, the probability is at least  $1 - 1/n^{r-1}$  that the longest streak has length less than  $r \lceil \lg n \rceil$ .

As an example, for  $n = 1000$  coin flips, the probability of having a streak of at least  $2 \lceil \lg n \rceil = 20$  heads is at most  $1/n = 1/1000$ . The chance of having a streak longer than  $3 \lceil \lg n \rceil = 30$  heads is at most  $1/n^2 = 1/1,000,000$ .

We now prove a complementary lower bound: the expected length of the longest streak of heads in  $n$  coin flips is  $\Omega(\lg n)$ . To prove this bound, we look for streaks

of length  $s$  by partitioning the  $n$  flips into approximately  $n/s$  groups of  $s$  flips each. If we choose  $s = \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor$ , we can show that it is likely that at least one of these groups comes up all heads, and hence it is likely that the longest streak has length at least  $s = \Omega(\lg n)$ . We then show that the longest streak has expected length  $\Omega(\lg n)$ .

We partition the  $n$  coin flips into at least  $\lfloor n / \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor \rfloor$  groups of  $\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor$  consecutive flips, and we bound the probability that no group comes up all heads. By equation (5.8), the probability that the group starting in position  $i$  comes up all heads is

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr \{A_{i, \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor}\} &= 1/2^{\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor} \\ &\geq 1/\sqrt{n} . \end{aligned}$$

The probability that a streak of heads of length at least  $\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor$  does not begin in position  $i$  is therefore at most  $1 - 1/\sqrt{n}$ . Since the  $\lfloor n / \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor \rfloor$  groups are formed from mutually exclusive, independent coin flips, the probability that every one of these groups *fails* to be a streak of length  $\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor$  is at most

$$\begin{aligned} (1 - 1/\sqrt{n})^{\lfloor n / \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor \rfloor} &\leq (1 - 1/\sqrt{n})^{n / \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor - 1} \\ &\leq (1 - 1/\sqrt{n})^{2n / \lg n - 1} \\ &\leq e^{-(2n / \lg n - 1) / \sqrt{n}} \\ &= O(e^{-\lg n}) \\ &= O(1/n) . \end{aligned}$$

For this argument, we used inequality (3.12),  $1 + x \leq e^x$ , and the fact, which you might want to verify, that  $(2n / \lg n - 1) / \sqrt{n} \geq \lg n$  for sufficiently large  $n$ .

Thus, the probability that the longest streak equals or exceeds  $\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor$  is

$$\sum_{j=\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor}^n \Pr \{L_j\} \geq 1 - O(1/n) . \quad (5.11)$$

We can now calculate a lower bound on the expected length of the longest streak, beginning with equation (5.10) and proceeding in a manner similar to our analysis of the upper bound:



$$\begin{aligned}
E[L] &= \sum_{j=0}^n j \Pr\{L_j\} \\
&= \sum_{j=0}^{\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor - 1} j \Pr\{L_j\} + \sum_{j=\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor}^n j \Pr\{L_j\} \\
&\geq \sum_{j=0}^{\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor - 1} 0 \cdot \Pr\{L_j\} + \sum_{j=\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor}^n \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor \Pr\{L_j\} \\
&= 0 \cdot \sum_{j=0}^{\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor - 1} \Pr\{L_j\} + \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor \sum_{j=\lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor}^n \Pr\{L_j\} \\
&\geq 0 + \lfloor (\lg n)/2 \rfloor (1 - O(1/n)) \quad (\text{by inequality (5.11)}) \\
&= \Omega(\lg n).
\end{aligned}$$

As with the birthday paradox, we can obtain a simpler but approximate analysis using indicator random variables. We let  $X_{ik} = I\{A_{ik}\}$  be the indicator random variable associated with a streak of heads of length at least  $k$  beginning with the  $i$ th coin flip. To count the total number of such streaks, we define

$$X = \sum_{i=1}^{n-k+1} X_{ik}.$$

Taking expectations and using linearity of expectation, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
E[X] &= E\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n-k+1} X_{ik}\right] \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n-k+1} E[X_{ik}] \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n-k+1} \Pr\{A_{ik}\} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n-k+1} 1/2^k \\
&= \frac{n-k+1}{2^k}.
\end{aligned}$$

By plugging in various values for  $k$ , we can calculate the expected number of streaks of length  $k$ . If this number is large (much greater than 1), then we expect many streaks of length  $k$  to occur and the probability that one occurs is high. If

this number is small (much less than 1), then we expect few streaks of length  $k$  to occur and the probability that one occurs is low. If  $k = c \lg n$ , for some positive constant  $c$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 E[X] &= \frac{n - c \lg n + 1}{2^{c \lg n}} \\
 &= \frac{n - c \lg n + 1}{n^c} \\
 &= \frac{1}{n^{c-1}} - \frac{(c \lg n - 1)/n}{n^{c-1}} \\
 &= \Theta(1/n^{c-1}).
 \end{aligned}$$

If  $c$  is large, the expected number of streaks of length  $c \lg n$  is small, and we conclude that they are unlikely to occur. On the other hand, if  $c = 1/2$ , then we obtain  $E[X] = \Theta(1/n^{1/2-1}) = \Theta(n^{1/2})$ , and we expect that there are a large number of streaks of length  $(1/2) \lg n$ . Therefore, one streak of such a length is likely to occur. From these rough estimates alone, we can conclude that the expected length of the longest streak is  $\Theta(\lg n)$ .

#### 5.4.4 The on-line hiring problem

As a final example, we consider a variant of the hiring problem. Suppose now that we do not wish to interview all the candidates in order to find the best one. We also do not wish to hire and fire as we find better and better applicants. Instead, we are willing to settle for a candidate who is close to the best, in exchange for hiring exactly once. We must obey one company requirement: after each interview we must either immediately offer the position to the applicant or immediately reject the applicant. What is the trade-off between minimizing the amount of interviewing and maximizing the quality of the candidate hired?

We can model this problem in the following way. After meeting an applicant, we are able to give each one a score; let  $score(i)$  denote the score we give to the  $i$ th applicant, and assume that no two applicants receive the same score. After we have seen  $j$  applicants, we know which of the  $j$  has the highest score, but we do not know whether any of the remaining  $n - j$  applicants will receive a higher score. We decide to adopt the strategy of selecting a positive integer  $k < n$ , interviewing and then rejecting the first  $k$  applicants, and hiring the first applicant thereafter who has a higher score than all preceding applicants. If it turns out that the best-qualified applicant was among the first  $k$  interviewed, then we hire the  $n$ th applicant. We formalize this strategy in the procedure `ON-LINE-MAXIMUM( $k, n$ )`, which returns the index of the candidate we wish to hire.

ON-LINE-MAXIMUM( $k, n$ )

```

1  bestscore =  $-\infty$ 
2  for  $i = 1$  to  $k$ 
3      if  $\text{score}(i) > \text{bestscore}$ 
4           $\text{bestscore} = \text{score}(i)$ 
5  for  $i = k + 1$  to  $n$ 
6      if  $\text{score}(i) > \text{bestscore}$ 
7          return  $i$ 
8  return  $n$ 

```

We wish to determine, for each possible value of  $k$ , the probability that we hire the most qualified applicant. We then choose the best possible  $k$ , and implement the strategy with that value. For the moment, assume that  $k$  is fixed. Let  $M(j) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq j} \{\text{score}(i)\}$  denote the maximum score among applicants 1 through  $j$ . Let  $S$  be the event that we succeed in choosing the best-qualified applicant, and let  $S_i$  be the event that we succeed when the best-qualified applicant is the  $i$ th one interviewed. Since the various  $S_i$  are disjoint, we have that  $\Pr\{S\} = \sum_{i=1}^n \Pr\{S_i\}$ . Noting that we never succeed when the best-qualified applicant is one of the first  $k$ , we have that  $\Pr\{S_i\} = 0$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ . Thus, we obtain

$$\Pr\{S\} = \sum_{i=k+1}^n \Pr\{S_i\} . \quad (5.12)$$

We now compute  $\Pr\{S_i\}$ . In order to succeed when the best-qualified applicant is the  $i$ th one, two things must happen. First, the best-qualified applicant must be in position  $i$ , an event which we denote by  $B_i$ . Second, the algorithm must not select any of the applicants in positions  $k + 1$  through  $i - 1$ , which happens only if, for each  $j$  such that  $k + 1 \leq j \leq i - 1$ , we find that  $\text{score}(j) < \text{bestscore}$  in line 6. (Because scores are unique, we can ignore the possibility of  $\text{score}(j) = \text{bestscore}$ .) In other words, all of the values  $\text{score}(k + 1)$  through  $\text{score}(i - 1)$  must be less than  $M(k)$ ; if any are greater than  $M(k)$ , we instead return the index of the first one that is greater. We use  $O_i$  to denote the event that none of the applicants in position  $k + 1$  through  $i - 1$  are chosen. Fortunately, the two events  $B_i$  and  $O_i$  are independent. The event  $O_i$  depends only on the relative ordering of the values in positions 1 through  $i - 1$ , whereas  $B_i$  depends only on whether the value in position  $i$  is greater than the values in all other positions. The ordering of the values in positions 1 through  $i - 1$  does not affect whether the value in position  $i$  is greater than all of them, and the value in position  $i$  does not affect the ordering of the values in positions 1 through  $i - 1$ . Thus we can apply equation (C.15) to obtain

$$\Pr\{S_i\} = \Pr\{B_i \cap O_i\} = \Pr\{B_i\} \Pr\{O_i\} .$$

The probability  $\Pr\{B_i\}$  is clearly  $1/n$ , since the maximum is equally likely to be in any one of the  $n$  positions. For event  $O_i$  to occur, the maximum value in positions 1 through  $i-1$ , which is equally likely to be in any of these  $i-1$  positions, must be in one of the first  $k$  positions. Consequently,  $\Pr\{O_i\} = k/(i-1)$  and  $\Pr\{S_i\} = k/(n(i-1))$ . Using equation (5.12), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Pr\{S\} &= \sum_{i=k+1}^n \Pr\{S_i\} \\ &= \sum_{i=k+1}^n \frac{k}{n(i-1)} \\ &= \frac{k}{n} \sum_{i=k+1}^n \frac{1}{i-1} \\ &= \frac{k}{n} \sum_{i=k}^{n-1} \frac{1}{i} . \end{aligned}$$

We approximate by integrals to bound this summation from above and below. By the inequalities (A.12), we have

$$\int_k^n \frac{1}{x} dx \leq \sum_{i=k}^{n-1} \frac{1}{i} \leq \int_{k-1}^{n-1} \frac{1}{x} dx .$$

Evaluating these definite integrals gives us the bounds

$$\frac{k}{n}(\ln n - \ln k) \leq \Pr\{S\} \leq \frac{k}{n}(\ln(n-1) - \ln(k-1)) ,$$

which provide a rather tight bound for  $\Pr\{S\}$ . Because we wish to maximize our probability of success, let us focus on choosing the value of  $k$  that maximizes the lower bound on  $\Pr\{S\}$ . (Besides, the lower-bound expression is easier to maximize than the upper-bound expression.) Differentiating the expression  $(k/n)(\ln n - \ln k)$  with respect to  $k$ , we obtain

$$\frac{1}{n}(\ln n - \ln k - 1) .$$

Setting this derivative equal to 0, we see that we maximize the lower bound on the probability when  $\ln k = \ln n - 1 = \ln(n/e)$  or, equivalently, when  $k = n/e$ . Thus, if we implement our strategy with  $k = n/e$ , we succeed in hiring our best-qualified applicant with probability at least  $1/e$ .

## Exercises

### 5.4-1

How many people must there be in a room before the probability that someone has the same birthday as you do is at least  $1/2$ ? How many people must there be before the probability that at least two people have a birthday on July 4 is greater than  $1/2$ ?

### 5.4-2

Suppose that we toss balls into  $b$  bins until some bin contains two balls. Each toss is independent, and each ball is equally likely to end up in any bin. What is the expected number of ball tosses?

### 5.4-3 ★

For the analysis of the birthday paradox, is it important that the birthdays be mutually independent, or is pairwise independence sufficient? Justify your answer.

### 5.4-4 ★

How many people should be invited to a party in order to make it likely that there are *three* people with the same birthday?

### 5.4-5 ★

What is the probability that a  $k$ -string over a set of size  $n$  forms a  $k$ -permutation? How does this question relate to the birthday paradox?

### 5.4-6 ★

Suppose that  $n$  balls are tossed into  $n$  bins, where each toss is independent and the ball is equally likely to end up in any bin. What is the expected number of empty bins? What is the expected number of bins with exactly one ball?

### 5.4-7 ★

Sharpen the lower bound on streak length by showing that in  $n$  flips of a fair coin, the probability is less than  $1/n$  that no streak longer than  $\lg n - 2 \lg \lg n$  consecutive heads occurs.

---

## Problems

### 5-1 Probabilistic counting

With a  $b$ -bit counter, we can ordinarily only count up to  $2^b - 1$ . With R. Morris's *probabilistic counting*, we can count up to a much larger value at the expense of some loss of precision.

We let a counter value of  $i$  represent a count of  $n_i$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots, 2^b - 1$ , where the  $n_i$  form an increasing sequence of nonnegative values. We assume that the initial value of the counter is 0, representing a count of  $n_0 = 0$ . The INCREMENT operation works on a counter containing the value  $i$  in a probabilistic manner. If  $i = 2^b - 1$ , then the operation reports an overflow error. Otherwise, the INCREMENT operation increases the counter by 1 with probability  $1/(n_{i+1} - n_i)$ , and it leaves the counter unchanged with probability  $1 - 1/(n_{i+1} - n_i)$ .

If we select  $n_i = i$  for all  $i \geq 0$ , then the counter is an ordinary one. More interesting situations arise if we select, say,  $n_i = 2^{i-1}$  for  $i > 0$  or  $n_i = F_i$  (the  $i$ th Fibonacci number—see Section 3.2).

For this problem, assume that  $n_{2^b-1}$  is large enough that the probability of an overflow error is negligible.

- a. Show that the expected value represented by the counter after  $n$  INCREMENT operations have been performed is exactly  $n$ .
- b. The analysis of the variance of the count represented by the counter depends on the sequence of the  $n_i$ . Let us consider a simple case:  $n_i = 100i$  for all  $i \geq 0$ . Estimate the variance in the value represented by the register after  $n$  INCREMENT operations have been performed.

### 5-2 Searching an unsorted array

This problem examines three algorithms for searching for a value  $x$  in an unsorted array  $A$  consisting of  $n$  elements.

Consider the following randomized strategy: pick a random index  $i$  into  $A$ . If  $A[i] = x$ , then we terminate; otherwise, we continue the search by picking a new random index into  $A$ . We continue picking random indices into  $A$  until we find an index  $j$  such that  $A[j] = x$  or until we have checked every element of  $A$ . Note that we pick from the whole set of indices each time, so that we may examine a given element more than once.

- a. Write pseudocode for a procedure RANDOM-SEARCH to implement the strategy above. Be sure that your algorithm terminates when all indices into  $A$  have been picked.

- b.** Suppose that there is exactly one index  $i$  such that  $A[i] = x$ . What is the expected number of indices into  $A$  that we must pick before we find  $x$  and RANDOM-SEARCH terminates?
- c.** Generalizing your solution to part (b), suppose that there are  $k \geq 1$  indices  $i$  such that  $A[i] = x$ . What is the expected number of indices into  $A$  that we must pick before we find  $x$  and RANDOM-SEARCH terminates? Your answer should be a function of  $n$  and  $k$ .
- d.** Suppose that there are no indices  $i$  such that  $A[i] = x$ . What is the expected number of indices into  $A$  that we must pick before we have checked all elements of  $A$  and RANDOM-SEARCH terminates?

Now consider a deterministic linear search algorithm, which we refer to as DETERMINISTIC-SEARCH. Specifically, the algorithm searches  $A$  for  $x$  in order, considering  $A[1], A[2], A[3], \dots, A[n]$  until either it finds  $A[i] = x$  or it reaches the end of the array. Assume that all possible permutations of the input array are equally likely.

- e.** Suppose that there is exactly one index  $i$  such that  $A[i] = x$ . What is the average-case running time of DETERMINISTIC-SEARCH? What is the worst-case running time of DETERMINISTIC-SEARCH?
- f.** Generalizing your solution to part (e), suppose that there are  $k \geq 1$  indices  $i$  such that  $A[i] = x$ . What is the average-case running time of DETERMINISTIC-SEARCH? What is the worst-case running time of DETERMINISTIC-SEARCH? Your answer should be a function of  $n$  and  $k$ .
- g.** Suppose that there are no indices  $i$  such that  $A[i] = x$ . What is the average-case running time of DETERMINISTIC-SEARCH? What is the worst-case running time of DETERMINISTIC-SEARCH?

Finally, consider a randomized algorithm SCRAMBLE-SEARCH that works by first randomly permuting the input array and then running the deterministic linear search given above on the resulting permuted array.

- h.** Letting  $k$  be the number of indices  $i$  such that  $A[i] = x$ , give the worst-case and expected running times of SCRAMBLE-SEARCH for the cases in which  $k = 0$  and  $k = 1$ . Generalize your solution to handle the case in which  $k \geq 1$ .
- i.** Which of the three searching algorithms would you use? Explain your answer.

---

**Chapter notes**

Bollobás [53], Hofri [174], and Spencer [321] contain a wealth of advanced probabilistic techniques. The advantages of randomized algorithms are discussed and surveyed by Karp [200] and Rabin [288]. The textbook by Motwani and Raghavan [262] gives an extensive treatment of randomized algorithms.

Several variants of the hiring problem have been widely studied. These problems are more commonly referred to as “secretary problems.” An example of work in this area is the paper by Ajtai, Meggido, and Waarts [11].